



This copy of the TypeScript handbook was created on Tuesday, May 25, 2021 against commit [02613b](#) with [TypeScript 4.2](#).

# Table of Contents

<a href="#">The TypeScript Handbook</a>	Your first step to learn TypeScript
<a href="#">The Basics</a>	Step one in learning TypeScript: The basic types.
<a href="#">Everyday Types</a>	The language primitives.
<a href="#">Narrowing</a>	Understand how TypeScript uses JavaScript knowledge to reduce the amount of type syntax in your projects.
<a href="#">More on Functions</a>	Learn about how Functions work in TypeScript.
<a href="#">Object Types</a>	How TypeScript describes the shapes of JavaScript objects.
<a href="#">Creating Types from Types</a>	An overview of the ways in which you can create more types from existing types.
<a href="#">Generics</a>	Types which take parameters
<a href="#">Keyof Type Operator</a>	Using the keyof operator in type contexts.
<a href="#">Typeof Type Operator</a>	Using the typeof operator in type contexts.
<a href="#">Indexed Access Types</a>	Using Type['a'] syntax to access a subset of a type.
<a href="#">Conditional Types</a>	Create types which act like if statements in the type system.
<a href="#">Mapped Types</a>	Generating types by re-using an existing type.
<a href="#">Template Literal Types</a>	Generating mapping types which change properties via template literal strings.
<a href="#">Classes</a>	How classes work in TypeScript
<a href="#">Modules</a>	How JavaScript handles communicating across file boundaries.

# The TypeScript Handbook

## About this Handbook

Over 20 years after its introduction to the programming community, JavaScript is now one of the most widespread cross-platform languages ever created. Starting as a small scripting language for adding trivial interactivity to webpages, JavaScript has grown to be a language of choice for both frontend and backend applications of every size. While the size, scope, and complexity of programs written in JavaScript has grown exponentially, the ability of the JavaScript language to express the relationships between different units of code has not. Combined with JavaScript's rather peculiar runtime semantics, this mismatch between language and program complexity has made JavaScript development a difficult task to manage at scale.

The most common kinds of errors that programmers write can be described as type errors: a certain kind of value was used where a different kind of value was expected. This could be due to simple typos, a failure to understand the API surface of a library, incorrect assumptions about runtime behavior, or other errors. The goal of TypeScript is to be a static typechecker for JavaScript programs - in other words, a tool that runs before your code runs (static) and ensures that the types of the program are correct (typechecked).

If you are coming to TypeScript without a JavaScript background, with the intention of TypeScript being your first language, we recommend you first start reading the documentation [on JavaScript at the Mozilla Web Docs](#). If you have experience in other languages, you should be able to pick up JavaScript syntax quite quickly by reading the handbook.

## How is this Handbook Structured

The handbook is split into two sections:

- **The Handbook**

The TypeScript Handbook is intended to be a comprehensive document that explains TypeScript to everyday programmers. You can read the handbook by going from top to bottom in the left-hand navigation.

You should expect each chapter or page to provide you with a strong understanding of the given concepts. The TypeScript Handbook is not a complete language specification, but it is intended to be a comprehensive guide to all of the language's features and behaviors.

A reader who completes the walkthrough should be able to:

- Read and understand commonly-used TypeScript syntax and patterns
- Explain the effects of important compiler options
- Correctly predict type system behavior in most cases

In the interests of clarity and brevity, the main content of the Handbook will not explore every edge case or minutiae of the features being covered. You can find more details on particular concepts in the reference articles.

- **Reference Files**

The reference section below the handbook in the navigation is built to provide a richer understanding of how a particular part of TypeScript works. You can read it top-to-bottom, but each section aims to provide a deeper explanation of a single concept - meaning there is no aim for continuity.

## Non-Goals

The Handbook is also intended to be a concise document that can be comfortably read in a few hours. Certain topics won't be covered in order to keep things short.

Specifically, the Handbook does not fully introduce core JavaScript basics like functions, classes, and closures. Where appropriate, we'll include links to background reading that you can use to read up on those concepts.

The Handbook also isn't intended to be a replacement for a language specification. In some cases, edge cases or formal descriptions of behavior will be skipped in favor of high-level, easier-to-understand explanations. Instead, there are separate reference pages that more precisely and formally describe many aspects of TypeScript's behavior. The reference pages are not intended for readers unfamiliar with TypeScript, so they may use advanced terminology or reference topics you haven't read about yet.

Finally, the Handbook won't cover how TypeScript interacts with other tools, except where necessary. Topics like how to configure TypeScript with webpack, rollup, parcel, react, babel, closure, lerna, rush, bazel, preact, vue, angular, svelte, jquery, yarn, or npm are out of scope - you can find these resources elsewhere on the web.

## Get Started

Before getting started with [The Basics](#), we recommend reading one of the following introductory pages. These introductions are intended to highlight key similarities and differences between TypeScript and your favored programming language, and clear up common misconceptions specific to those languages.

- [TypeScript for New Programmers](#)
- [TypeScript for JavaScript Programmers](#)
- [TypeScript for OOP Programmers](#)
- [TypeScript for Functional Programmers](#)

Otherwise, jump to [The Basics](#) or grab a copy in [Epub](#) or [PDF](#) form.

# The Basics

Each and every value in JavaScript has a set of behaviors you can observe from running different operations. That sounds abstract, but as a quick example, consider some operations we might run on a variable named `message`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Accessing the property 'toLowerCase'</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// on 'message' and then calling it</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080">message</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">toLowerCase</span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Calling 'message'</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26">message</span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

If we break this down, the first runnable line of code accesses a property called `toLowerCase` and then calls it. The second one tries to call `message` directly.

But assuming we don't know the value of `message` - and that's pretty common - we can't reliably say what results we'll get from trying to run any of this code. The behavior of each operation depends entirely on what value we had in the first place.

- Is `message` callable?
- Does it have a property called `toLowerCase` on it?
- If it does, is `toLowerCase` even callable?
- If both of these values are callable, what do they return?

The answers to these questions are usually things we keep in our heads when we write JavaScript, and we have to hope we got all the details right.

Let's say `message` was defined in the following way.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">message</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello World!"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

As you can probably guess, if we try to run `message.toLowerCase()`, we'll get the same string only in lower-case.

What about that second line of code? If you're familiar with JavaScript, you'll know this fails with an exception:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">txt</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: undefined">TypeError: message is not a function</span></div></code></div>
</pre>
```

It'd be great if we could avoid mistakes like this.

When we run our code, the way that our JavaScript runtime chooses what to do is by figuring out the *type* of the value - what sorts of behaviors and capabilities it has. That's part of what that `TypeError` is alluding to - it's saying that the string `"Hello world!"` cannot be called as a function.

For some values, such as the primitives `string` and `number`, we can identify their type at runtime using the `typeof` operator. But for other things like functions, there's no corresponding runtime mechanism to identify their types. For example, consider this function:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26">fn</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080">x</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">x</span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">flip</span><span style="color: #000000">());
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code></div>
</pre>
```

We can *observe* by reading the code that this function will only work if given an object with a callable `flip` property, but JavaScript doesn't surface this information in a way that we can check while the code is running. The only way in pure JavaScript to tell what `fn` does with a particular value is to call it and see what happens. This kind of behavior makes it hard to predict what code will do before it runs, which means it's harder to know what your code is going to do while you're writing it.

Seen in this way, a *type* is the concept of describing which values can be passed to `fn` and which will crash. JavaScript only truly provides *dynamic* typing - running the code to see what happens.

The alternative is to use a *static* type system to make predictions about what code is expected *before* it runs.

# Static type-checking

Think back to that `TypeError` we got earlier from trying to call a `string` as a function. *Most people* don't like to get any sorts of errors when running their code - those are considered bugs! And when we write new code, we try our best to avoid introducing new bugs.

If we add just a bit of code, save our file, re-run the code, and immediately see the error, we might be able to isolate the problem quickly; but that's not always the case. We might not have tested the feature thoroughly enough, so we might never actually run into a potential error that would be thrown! Or if we were lucky enough to witness the error, we might have ended up doing large refactorings and adding a lot of different code that we're forced to dig through.

Ideally, we could have a tool that helps us find these bugs *before* our code runs. That's what a static type-checker like TypeScript does. *Static types systems* describe the shapes and behaviors of what our values will be when we run our programs. A type-checker like TypeScript uses that information and tells us when things might be going off the rails.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const message: &quot;hello!&quot;'> message</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello!"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='const message: &quot;hello!&quot;'> message</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><span class="error"><span>This expression is not callable. Type 'String' has no call signatures.</span><span class="code">2349</span></span><span class="error-behind">This expression is not callable. Type 'String' has no call signatures.</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBOAUAMZwB2iALqA</div></pre>
```

Running that last sample with TypeScript will give us an error message before we run the code in the first place.

## Non-exception Failures

So far we've been discussing certain things like runtime errors - cases where the JavaScript runtime tells us that it thinks something is nonsensical. Those cases come up because [the ECMAScript specification](#) has explicit instructions on how the language should behave when it runs into something unexpected.

For example, the specification says that trying to call something that isn't callable should throw an error. Maybe that sounds like "obvious behavior", but you could imagine that accessing a property



that doesn't exist on an object should throw an error too. Instead, JavaScript gives us different behavior and returns the value `undefined`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class="language-id">js</div> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1">user</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">name:</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Daniel"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080">age:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #098658">26</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div class='line'> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080">user</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080">location</span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> <span
style="color: #008000">// returns undefined</span> </div> </code> </div> </pre>
```

Ultimately, a static type system has to make the call over what code should be flagged as an error in its system, even if it's "valid" JavaScript that won't immediately throw an error. In TypeScript, the following code produces an error about `location` not being defined:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const user:
{&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}' >user</data-lsp></span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-
lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Daniel"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number'
>age</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#098658">26</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='const user: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}' >user</data-
lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-err>
<data-lsp lsp='any' >location</data-lsp></data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <span class="error"><span>Property 'location' does not exist on type '{ name:
string; age: number; }'.</span> <span class="code">2339</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Property 'location' does not exist on type '{ name: string; age: number; }'.</span> </code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQBjOAO0QBdQB:
'></a> </div> </pre>
```

While sometimes that implies a trade-off in what you can express, the intent is to catch legitimate bugs in our programs. And TypeScript catches *a lot* of legitimate bugs.

For example: typos,

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const announcement: &quot;Hello World!&quot;'>announcement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello World!"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// How quickly can you spot the typos?</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const announcement: &quot;Hello World!&quot;'>announcement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='any'>toLocaleLowerCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const announcement: &quot;Hello World!&quot;'>announcement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='any'>toLocalLowerCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// We probably meant to write this...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const announcement: &quot;Hello World!&quot;'>announcement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toLocaleLowerCase(locales?: string | string[] | undefined): string'>toLocaleLowerCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsFECd7XgZwFAGNqRQF1AlaQwCukGApglJj4oA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

uncalled functions,

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function flipCoin(): boolean'>flipCoin</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// Meant to be Math.random()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random(): number'>random</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #098658">0.5</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Operator '&lt;' cannot be applied to types '()' => number' and 'number'.</span><span class="code">2365</span></span><span class="error-behind">Operator '&lt;' cannot be applied to types '()' => number' and 'number'.</span></div></code></pre>
```

```
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsFVIK4GcCmATAMtAxgQwDZIBQIEKATudO
</div></pre>
```

or basic logic errors.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
value: &quot;a&quot; | &quot;b&quot;'>value</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'
>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random(): number'>random</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">() &lt; </span><span style="color: #098658">0.5</span><span
style="color: #000000"> ? </span><span style="color: #A31515">"a"</span><span style="color:
#000000"> : </span><span style="color: #A31515">"b"</span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color:
#000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const value:
&quot;a&quot; | &quot;b&quot;'>value</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> !== </span><span style="color: #A31515">"a"</span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const value: &quot;a&quot;'>value</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"b"</span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error"><span>This condition will
always return 'false' since the types ""a"" and ""b"" have no overlap.</span><span
class="code">2367</span></span><span class="error-behind">This condition will always return
'false' since the types ""a"" and ""b"" have no overlap.</span><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #008000">// Oops, unreachable</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGYBsB2AUAMZwB2iALqA
</div></pre>
```

## Types for Tooling

TypeScript can catch bugs when we make mistakes in our code. That's great, but TypeScript can *also* prevent us from making those mistakes in the first place.

The type-checker has information to check things like whether we're accessing the right properties on variables and other properties. Once it has that information, it can also start *suggesting* which properties you might want to use.

That means TypeScript can be leveraged for editing code too, and the core type-checker can provide error messages and code completion as you type in the editor. That's part of what people often refer to when they talk about tooling in TypeScript.

```
<!-- prettier-ignore --> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color:
#FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">import</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) function express(): core.Express&#13;(alias)
namespace express&#13;import express' >express</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"express"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const app: Express'
>app</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) express(): Express&#13;import express' >express</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const app: Express' >app</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Application.get:
&#13;ParamsDictionary, any, any, QueryString.ParsedQs>(path: PathParams, ...handlers:
RequestHandler&#13;ParamsDictionary, any, any, QueryString.ParsedQs>[]) => Express (+3
overloads)' >get</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"/"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) req: Request&#13;ParamsDictionary, any, any,
QueryString.ParsedQs>' >req</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) res: Response&#13;any>' >res</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">){</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) res:
Response&#13;any>' >res</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='any' >sen</data-lsp> </span> </div> <span class='inline-
completions'> <ul class='dropdown'> <li class=''> <span> <span class='result-
found'>sen</span>d<span></li> <li class=''> <span> <span class='result-
found'>sen</span>dDate<span></li> <li class='deprecated'> <span> <span class='result-
found'>sen</span>dfile<span></li> <li class=''> <span> <span class='result-
found'>sen</span>dFile<span></li> <li class=''> <span> <span class='result-
found'>sen</span>dStatus<span></li> </ul> </span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">});</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='const app: Express' >app</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Application.listen(port: number, callback?: ((...args:
any[]) => void) | undefined): Server (+5 overloads)' >listen</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #098658">3000</span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsFECd7XgZwFAggUxQWWgCYCuANlgJKQ  
</div></pre>

TypeScript takes tooling seriously, and that goes beyond completions and errors as you type. An editor that supports TypeScript can deliver "quick fixes" to automatically fix errors, refactorings to easily re-organize code, and useful navigation features for jumping to definitions of a variable, or finding all references to a given variable. All of this is built on top of the type-checker and is fully cross-platform, so it's likely that [your favorite editor has TypeScript support available](#).

## tsc, the TypeScript compiler

We've been talking about type-checking, but we haven't yet used our *type-checker*. Let's get acquainted with our new friend `tsc`, the TypeScript compiler. First we'll need to grab it via npm.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class="language-id">sh</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">npm install -g typescript</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

This installs the TypeScript Compiler `tsc` globally. You can use `npm` or similar tools if you'd prefer to run `tsc` from a local `node_modules` package instead.

Now let's move to an empty folder and try writing our first TypeScript program: `hello.ts`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Greets the world.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello world!"</span></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEHECcFNoFwM6jgC2qA7ge0gGwCYB0AUAMZYB2'></div></pre>
```

Notice there are no frills here; this "hello world" program looks identical to what you'd write for a "hello world" program in JavaScript. And now let's type-check it by running the command `tsc` which was installed for us by the `typescript` package.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class="language-id">sh</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">tsc hello.ts</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

Tada!

Wait, "tada" *what* exactly? We ran `tsc` and nothing happened! Well, there were no type errors, so we didn't get any output in our console since there was nothing to report.

But check again - we got some *file* output instead. If we look in our current directory, we'll see a `hello.js` file next to `hello.ts`. That's the output from our `hello.ts` file after `tsc` *compiles* or *transforms* it into a plain JavaScript file. And if we check the contents, we'll see what TypeScript spits out after it processes a `.ts` file:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">// Greets the world.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#001080">console</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26">log</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Hello world!"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code></div>
</pre>
```

In this case, there was very little for TypeScript to transform, so it looks identical to what we wrote. The compiler tries to emit clean readable code that looks like something a person would write. While that's not always so easy, TypeScript indents consistently, is mindful of when our code spans across different lines of code, and tries to keep comments around.

What about if we *did* introduce a type-checking error? Let's rewrite `hello.ts`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// This is an
industrial-grade general-purpose greeter function:</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: any, date: any): void' >greet</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) person: any' >person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,<
/span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: any' >date</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">`Hello </span><span
style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
person: any' >person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span
style="color: #A31515">,</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: any' >date</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">`</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: any, date:
any): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
```

```
#A31515">"Brendan"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a  
class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsFECd7XgZwFAIAFQBYEsVQDQBDStyAEwF  
vHI0AFKOEodAGICUSigJSgA3mlCh1O28x4AOmZodgsAAwAJHmYQ0AASd2tUHQBFbZpoJwBPIkJEp0VUq  
</div></pre>
```

If we run `tsc hello.ts` again, notice that we get an error on the command line!

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div  
class="language-id">txt</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span  
style="color: undefined">Expected 2 arguments, but got 1.</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

TypeScript is telling us we forgot to pass an argument to the `greet` function, and rightfully so. So far we've only written standard JavaScript, and yet type-checking was still able to find problems with our code. Thanks TypeScript!

## Emitting with Errors

One thing you might not have noticed from the last example was that our `hello.js` file changed again. If we open that file up then we'll see that the contents still basically look the same as our input file. That might be a bit surprising given the fact that `tsc` reported an error about our code, but this is based on one of TypeScript's core values: much of the time, *you* will know better than TypeScript.

To reiterate from earlier, type-checking code limits the sorts of programs you can run, and so there's a tradeoff on what sorts of things a type-checker finds acceptable. Most of the time that's okay, but there are scenarios where those checks get in the way. For example, imagine yourself migrating JavaScript code over to TypeScript and introducing type-checking errors. Eventually you'll get around to cleaning things up for the type-checker, but that original JavaScript code was already working! Why should converting it over to TypeScript stop you from running it?

So TypeScript doesn't get in your way. Of course, over time, you may want to be a bit more defensive against mistakes, and make TypeScript act a bit more strictly. In that case, you can use the `--noEmitOnError` compiler option. Try changing your `hello.ts` file and running `tsc` with that flag:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div  
class="language-id">sh</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span  
style="color: #000000">tsc --noEmitOnError hello.ts</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

You'll notice that `hello.js` never gets updated.

## Explicit Types

Up until now, we haven't told TypeScript what `person` or `date` are. Let's edit the code to tell TypeScript that `person` is a `string`, and that `date` should be a `Date` object. We'll also use the `toDateString()` method on `date`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
greet(person: string, date: Date): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: string'
>person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: Date' >date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Date' >Date</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> ) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> `Hello </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> ${</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: string'
>person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> }</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">, today is </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> ${</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: Date' >date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000FF">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Date.toDateString():
string' >toDateString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">()</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> }</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> !` </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLGlg9mABAcwE4FN1QBQAd2oDOCAXIoVvk
</div> </pre>
```

What we did was add *type annotations* on `person` and `date` to describe what types of values `greet` can be called with. You can read that signature as "`greet` takes a `person` of type `string`, and a `date` of type `Date`".

With this, TypeScript can tell us about other cases where we might have been called incorrectly. For example...

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
greet(person: string, date: Date): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: string'
>person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080">
```



```

<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: Date' >date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Date' >Date</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> `Hello </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> ${</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: string'
>person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> }</span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> , today is </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> ${</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: Date' >date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000FF"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Date.toString():
string' >toString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF"> ()</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> }</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> !</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> );</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: string, date:
Date): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #A31515"> "Maddison" </span> <span style="color: #000000"> , </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Date: DateConstructor&#13;() => string'
>Date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> )</span>)</span> </div> <span class="error">
<span>Argument of type 'string' is not assignable to parameter of type 'Date'.</span> <span
class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Argument of type 'string' is not
assignable to parameter of type 'Date'.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAGYCuAdgMY,
</div> </pre>

```

Huh? TypeScript reported an error on our second argument, but why?

Perhaps surprisingly, calling `Date()` in JavaScript returns a `string`. On the other hand, constructing a `Date` with `new Date()` actually gives us what we were expecting.

Anyway, we can quickly fix up the error:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line dim'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: string, date: Date): void' >greet</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) person: string' >person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> , </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: Date' >date</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Date' >Date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line
dim'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var

```

```

console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">'Hello </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) person: string' >person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span>
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">,</span> today is </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) date: Date'
>date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Date.toString(): string' >toString</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000FF">()</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">!</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line
dim'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line highlight'> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: string, date: Date): void'
>greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"Maddison"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Date: DateConstructor&#13;new () => Date (+4 overloads)' >Date</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAQwE4FN1QBQAd2oDOCAXIoVkk
</div> </pre>

```

Keep in mind, we don't always have to write explicit type annotations. In many cases, TypeScript can even just *infer* (or "figure out") the types for us even if we omit them.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let msg: string'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> msg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello there!"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let msg: string</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/DYUwLgBATgzg5hAvBARACxMYB7CYMBOIAhCgNwBk
</div> </pre>

```

Even though we didn't tell TypeScript that `msg` had the type `string` it was able to figure that out. That's a feature, and it's best not to add annotations when the type system would end up inferring the same type anyway.

Note: the message bubble inside the code sample above. That is what your editor would show if you had hovered over the word.

## Erased Types

Let's take a look at what happens when we compile the above function `greet` with `tsc` to output JavaScript:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #A31515">"use strict"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26">greet</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">person</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080">date</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080">console</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">log</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello "</span><span style="color: #000000">+</span><span style="color: #001080">person</span><span style="color: #000000">+</span><span style="color: #A31515">",</span><span style="color: #000000">today is "</span><span style="color: #001080">date</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">toDate</span><span style="color: #000000">String</span><span style="color: #000000">()</span><span style="color: #A31515">!"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26">greet</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Maddison"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99">Date</span><span style="color: #000000">())</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEGcAsHsHcCiBbAlgFwFAgughgE4DmApugFygmAEIHHQBUTD9MTF5+dAEAlgBZPCUICK4yxWYSeFAEkEdXKA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

Notice two things here:

1. Our `person` and `date` parameters no longer have type annotations.
2. Our "template string" - that string that used backticks (the ``` character) - was converted to plain strings with concatenations (`+`).

More on that second point later, but let's now focus on that first point. Type annotations aren't part of JavaScript (or ECMAScript to be pedantic), so there really aren't any browsers or other runtimes that can just run TypeScript unmodified. That's why TypeScript needs a compiler in the first place - it needs some way to strip out or transform any TypeScript-specific code so that you can run it. Most TypeScript-specific code gets erased away, and likewise, here our type annotations were completely erased.

**Remember:** Type annotations never change the runtime behavior of your program.

# Downleveling

One other difference from the above was that our template string was rewritten from

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #A31515">`Hello </span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span
style="color: #001080">person</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span
style="color: #A31515">, today is </span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span
style="color: #001080">date</span><span style="color: #000000FF">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26">toDate</span><span style="color: #000000FF">String</span><span
style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">`</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

to

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #A31515">"Hello "</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span
style="color: #001080">person</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span
style="color: #A31515"> ", today is "</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span
style="color: #001080">date</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26">toDate</span><span style="color: #000000">String</span><span style="color:
#A31515"> " + </span><span style="color: #000000">() + </span><span style="color:
#A31515"> "!"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

Why did this happen?

Template strings are a feature from a version of ECMAScript called ECMAScript 2015 (a.k.a. ECMAScript 6, ES2015, ES6, etc. - *don't ask*). TypeScript has the ability to rewrite code from newer versions of ECMAScript to older ones such as ECMAScript 3 or ECMAScript 5 (a.k.a. ES3 and ES5). This process of moving from a newer or "higher" version of ECMAScript down to an older or "lower" one is sometimes called *downleveling*.

By default TypeScript targets ES3, an extremely old version of ECMAScript. We could have chosen something a little bit more recent by using the `--target` flag. Running with `--target es2015` changes TypeScript to target ECMAScript 2015, meaning code should be able to run wherever ECMAScript 2015 is supported. So running `tsc --target es2015 hello.ts` gives us the following output:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26">greet</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080">person</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
```

```
#001080">date</span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">console</span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">log</span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">'Hello </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080">person</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">, today is </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080">date</span><span style="color:
#000000FF">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">toDateString</span><span style="color:
#000000FF">())</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color:
#A31515">!</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#795E26">greet</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Maddison"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">Date</span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

While the default target is ES3, the great majority of current browsers support ES2015. Most developers can therefore safely specify ES2015 or above as a target, unless compatibility with certain ancient browsers is important.

## Strictness

Different users come to TypeScript looking for different things in a type-checker. Some people are looking for a more loose opt-in experience which can help validate only some parts of their program, and still have decent tooling. This is the default experience with TypeScript, where types are optional, inference takes the most lenient types, and there's no checking for potentially `null` / `undefined` values. Much like how `tsc` emits in the face of errors, these defaults are put in place to stay out of your way. If you're migrating existing JavaScript, that might be a desirable first step.

In contrast, a lot of users prefer to have TypeScript validate as much as it can straight away, and that's why the language provides strictness settings as well. These strictness settings turn static type-checking from a switch (either your code is checked or not) into something closer to a dial. The further you turn this dial up, the more TypeScript will check for you. This can require a little extra work, but generally speaking it pays for itself in the long run, and enables more thorough checks and more accurate tooling. When possible, a new codebase should always turn these strictness checks on.

TypeScript has several type-checking strictness flags that can be turned on or off, and all of our examples will be written with all of them enabled unless otherwise stated. The `--strict` flag in the CLI, or `"strict": true` in a `tsconfig.json` toggles them all on simultaneously, but we

can opt out of them individually. The two biggest ones you should know about are `noImplicitAny` and `strictNullChecks`.

### `noImplicitAny`

Recall that in some places, TypeScript doesn't try to infer any types for us and instead falls back to the most lenient type: `any`. This isn't the worst thing that can happen - after all, falling back to `any` is just the plain JavaScript experience anyway.

However, using `any` often defeats the purpose of using TypeScript in the first place. The more typed your program is, the more validation and tooling you'll get, meaning you'll run into fewer bugs as you code. Turning on the `noImplicitAny` flag will issue an error on any variables whose type is implicitly inferred as `any`.

### `strictNullChecks`

By default, values like `null` and `undefined` are assignable to any other type. This can make writing some code easier, but forgetting to handle `null` and `undefined` is the cause of countless bugs in the world - some consider it a [billion dollar mistake](#)! The `strictNullChecks` flag makes handling `null` and `undefined` more explicit, and *saves* us from worrying about whether we *forgot* to handle `null` and `undefined`.

# Everyday Types

In this chapter, we'll cover some of the most common types of values you'll find in JavaScript code, and explain the corresponding ways to describe those types in TypeScript. This isn't an exhaustive list, and future chapters will describe more ways to name and use other types.

Types can also appear in many more *places* than just type annotations. As we learn about the types themselves, we'll also learn about the places where we can refer to these types to form new constructs.

We'll start by reviewing the most basic and common types you might encounter when writing JavaScript or TypeScript code. These will later form the core building blocks of more complex types.

## The primitives: `string`, `number`, and `boolean`

JavaScript has three very commonly used [primitives](#): `string`, `number`, and `boolean`. Each has a corresponding type in TypeScript. As you might expect, these are the same names you'd see if you used the JavaScript `typeof` operator on a value of those types:

- `string` represents string values like `"Hello, world"`
- `number` is for numbers like `42`. JavaScript does not have a special runtime value for integers, so there's no equivalent to `int` or `float` - everything is simply `number`
- `boolean` is for the two values `true` and `false`

The type names `String`, `Number`, and `Boolean` (starting with capital letters) are legal, but refer to some special built-in types that will very rarely appear in your code. *Always* use `string`, `number`, or `boolean` for types.

## Arrays

To specify the type of an array like `[1, 2, 3]`, you can use the syntax `number[]`; this syntax works for any type (e.g. `string[]` is an array of strings, and so on). You may also see this written as `Array<number>`, which means the same thing. We'll learn more about the syntax `T<U>` when we cover *generics*.

Note that `[number]` is a different thing; refer to the section on *tuple types*.

## any

TypeScript also has a special type, `any`, that you can use whenever you don't want a particular value to cause typechecking errors.

When a value is of type `any`, you can access any properties of it (which will in turn be of type `any`), call it like a function, assign it to (or from) a value of any type, or pretty much anything else that's syntactically legal:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let obj: any'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// None of the following lines of code will throw compiler errors.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Using `any` disables all further type checking, and it is assumed</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// you know the environment better than TypeScript.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let obj: any'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='any'>foo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='let obj: any'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let obj: any'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='any'>bar</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let obj: any'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let obj: any'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/DYUwLgBA9gRgVgLggQwHYE8lF4lG8lAeSADBAL4Dc'></div></pre>
```

The `any` type is useful when you don't want to write out a long type just to convince TypeScript that a particular line of code is okay.

## noImplicitAny



When you don't specify a type, and TypeScript can't infer it from context, the compiler will typically default to `any`.

You usually want to avoid this, though, because `any` isn't type-checked. Use the compiler flag [noImplicitAny](#) to flag any implicit `any` as an error.

## Type Annotations on Variables

When you declare a variable using `const`, `var`, or `let`, you can optionally add a type annotation to explicitly specify the type of the variable:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let myName: string'> myName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Alice"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/DYUwLgBATgngcgQyiAXBzmATgSwHYDmEAvBAEQC'></div></pre>
```

TypeScript doesn't use "types on the left"-style declarations like `int x = 0`; Type annotations will always go *after* the thing being typed.

In most cases, though, this isn't needed. Wherever possible, TypeScript tries to automatically *infer* the types in your code. For example, the type of a variable is inferred based on the type of its initializer:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// No type annotation needed -- 'myName' inferred as type 'string'</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let myName: string'> myName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Alice"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEDkHtQFwTwA4FNQEMB2711TAIpOqOkkgCbmGCI'></div></pre>
```

For the most part you don't need to explicitly learn the rules of inference. If you're starting out, try using fewer type annotations than you think - you might be surprised how few you need for TypeScript to fully understand what's going on.

# Functions

Functions are the primary means of passing data around in JavaScript. TypeScript allows you to specify the types of both the input and output values of functions.

## Parameter Type Annotations

When you declare a function, you can add type annotations after each parameter to declare what types of parameters the function accepts. Parameter type annotations go after the parameter name:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Parameter type annotation</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(name: string): void'>greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, "</span><span style="color: #000000">+</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string'>toUpperCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">())</span>+</span><span style="color: #A31515">"!!"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAUEMCDIWwKYBcHVEgngBwaSA7fAeyUiQEsj8Ac'></div></pre>
```

When a parameter has a type annotation, arguments to that function will be checked:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Would be a runtime error if executed!</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(name: string): void'>greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #098658"><data-err>42</data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error"><span>Argument of type 'number' is not assignable to parameter of type 'string'.</span><span class="code">2345</span></span><span class="error-behind">Argument of type 'number' is not assignable to parameter of type 'string'.</span></code><a class='playground-link'></div></pre>
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUACaQDGANgl  
</div></pre>

Even if you don't have type annotations on your parameters, TypeScript will still check that you passed the right number of arguments.

## Return Type Annotations

You can also add return type annotations. Return type annotations appear after the parameter list:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getFavoriteNumber(): number'>getFavoriteNumber</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(): </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">26</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAcwKZQGIEMBucBOMUqAciALYfPsJGixlGhpTpU3onzoQ+JACYAbAG5uAXyA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

Much like variable type annotations, you usually don't need a return type annotation because TypeScript will infer the function's return type based on its `return` statements. The type annotation in the above example doesn't change anything. Some codebases will explicitly specify a return type for documentation purposes, to prevent accidental changes, or just for personal preference.

## Anonymous Functions

Anonymous functions are a little bit different from function declarations. When a function appears in a place where TypeScript can determine how it's going to be called, the parameters of that function are automatically given types.

Here's an example:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// No type annotations here, but TypeScript can spot the bug</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const names: string[]'>names</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Alice"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Bob"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

```
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Eve"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">];</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// Contextual typing
for function</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const
names: string[]' >names</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array<string>.forEach(callbackfn: (value:
string, index: number, array: string[]) => void, thisArg?: any): void' >forEach</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s:
string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >toUpperCase</data-lsp> </data-err>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Property
'toUppercase' does not exist on type 'string'. Did you mean 'toUpperCase'?</span> <span
class="code">2551</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Property 'toUppercase' does not
exist on type 'string'. Did you mean 'toUpperCase'?</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">});</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// Contextual typing
also applies to arrow functions</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='const names: string[]' >names</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array<string>.forEach(callbackfn: (value: string, index: number, array: string[]) => void,
thisArg?: any): void' >forEach</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">((</span> <span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string'
>s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >toUpperCase</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">());</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Property 'toUppercase' does not exist
on type 'string'. Did you mean 'toUpperCase'?</span> <span class="code">2551</span> </span>
<span class="error-behind">Property 'toUppercase' does not exist on type 'string'. Did you mean
'toUpperCase'?</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYMEYBQJQA5OUAFwE8/'
</div> </pre>
```

Even though the parameter `s` didn't have a type annotation, TypeScript used the types of the `forEach` function, along with the inferred type of the array, to determine the type `s` will have.

This process is called *contextual typing* because the *context* that the function occurred in informed what type it should have. Similar to the inference rules, you don't need to explicitly learn how this happens, but understanding that it *does* happen can help you notice when type annotations aren't needed. Later, we'll see more examples of how the context that a value occurs in can affect its type.

## Object Types

Apart from primitives, the most common sort of type you'll encounter is an *object type*. This refers to any JavaScript value with properties, which is almost all of them! To define an object type, we simply list its properties and their types.

For example, here's a function that takes a point-like object:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// The
parameter's type annotation is an object type</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printCoord(pt: {&#13; x: number;&#13;
y: number;&#13;}); void' >printCoord</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pt: {&#13; x:
number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >pt</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">: { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number'
>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000"> } } {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"The coordinate's x value is "</span><span style="color:
#000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pt: {&#13; x:
number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >pt</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number'
>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"The
coordinate's y value is "</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span>
```

```

style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pt: {&#13; x: number;&#13; y:
number;&#13;}' >pt</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printCoord(pt: {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}): void' >printCoord</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) x: number' >x</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number' >y</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">7</span><span style="color: #000000"> });
</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEBUAsFNQBwIYCCEftoBdpIOQGdQMBPOWBao3I
+AwKCfAD0w8IjlqPDvUD4mPCoAG2gAOiSqAHMtACIoWHj1DUU6aHxTUAa3BCSJWFZQHNAAngMVJl
Li1TRKscqlqmrqWAibW3VSiLpFXEXIFFThYzNQAGYAGnsDAH3Y3LqA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Here, we annotated the parameter with a type with two properties - `x` and `y` - which are both of type `number`. You can use `,` or `;` to separate the properties, and the last separator is optional either way.

The type part of each property is also optional. If you don't specify a type, it will be assumed to be `any`.

## Optional Properties

Object types can also specify that some or all of their properties are *optional*. To do this, add a `?` after the property name:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printName(obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string;&#13;}): void'
>printName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string |
undefined;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: { </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) first: string' >first</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) last?:
string | undefined' >last</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> } } </span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>// ...</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">>// Both OK</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:

```

```
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printName(obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?:
string;&#13;}): void' >printName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) first: string' >first</data-lsp>:
</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Bob"</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function printName(obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?:
string;&#13;}): void' >printName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) first: string' >first</data-lsp>:
</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Alice"</span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
last?: string | undefined' >last</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"Alisson"</span><span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwE4zFAcgQwLYCmAFHAEYBM
</div></pre>
```

In JavaScript, if you access a property that doesn't exist, you'll get the value `undefined` rather than a runtime error. Because of this, when you *read* from an optional property, you'll have to check for `undefined` before using it.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printName(obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string;&#13;}): void'
>printName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string |
undefined;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: { </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) first: string' >first</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) last?:
string | undefined' >last</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> } } </span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// Error -
might crash if &apos;obj.last&apos; wasn&apos;t provided!</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string | undefined;&#13;}'
>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) last?: string | undefined' >last</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase():
string' >toUpperCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div><span
```

```

class="error"> <span>Object is possibly 'undefined'.</span> <span class="code">2532</span>
</span> <span class="error-behind">Object is possibly 'undefined'.</span> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj:
{&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string | undefined;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
last?: string | undefined' >last</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> != </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='var undefined' >undefined</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000">>// OK</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) obj: {&#13; first: string;&#13; last?: string | undefined;&#13;}'
>obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) last?: string' >last</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string'
>toUpperCase</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">>// A safe alternative using
modern JavaScript syntax:</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: {&#13;
first: string;&#13; last?: string | undefined;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) last?:
string | undefined' >last</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">?</span>.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string'
>toUpperCase</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwFYDmaBQAzAVwDsBjAFw
qDIYREeWQC8Q6AkGeLEmcam5uaWAPIA0rnmpPmFxsQlfZUyNfWNLW3cHV3m+ri5lgCColhs+JCgbCrI
</div> </pre>

```

## Union Types

TypeScript's type system allows you to build new types out of existing ones using a large variety of operators. Now that we know how to write a few types, it's time to start *combining* them in interesting ways.



## Defining a Union Type

The first way to combine types you might see is a *union* type. A union type is type formed from two or more other types, representing values that may be *any one* of those types. We refer to each of these types as the union's *members*.

Let's write a function that can operate on strings or numbers:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
println(id: number | string): void' >println</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id: string | number'
>id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Your ID is: "
</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) id: string | number' >id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// OK</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function println(id: number | string): void' >println</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #098658">101</span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000">// OK</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='function println(id: number | string): void' >println</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"202"</span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Error</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function println(id: number
| string): void' >println</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) myID: number' >myID</data-lsp>:</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">22342</span><span
style="color: #000000">});</span></div><span class="error"><span>Argument of type '{ myID:
number; }' is not assignable to parameter of type 'string | number'. Type '{ myID: number; }' is not
assignable to type 'number'.</span><span class="code">2345</span></span><span
class="error-behind">Argument of type '{ myID: number; }' is not assignable to parameter of type
'string | number'. Type '{ myID: number; }' is not assignable to type 'number'.</span></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAGYCuAdgMY'
</div></pre>
```

## Working with Union Types

It's easy to *provide* a value matching a union type - simply provide a type matching any of the union's members. If you *have* a value of a union type, how do you work with it?

TypeScript will only allow you to do things with the union if that thing is valid for *every* member of the union. For example, if you have the union `string | number`, you can't use methods that are only available on `string`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printId(id: number | string): void' >printId</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id: string | number'>id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id: string | number' >id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">).</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >toUpperCase</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div><span class="error"><span>Property 'toUpperCase' does not exist on type 'string | number'. Property 'toUpperCase' does not exist on type 'number'.</span><span class="code">2339</span></span><span class="error-behind">Property 'toUpperCase' does not exist on type 'string | number'. Property 'toUpperCase' does not exist on type 'number'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQAzAVwDsBjAFw'></div></pre>
```

The solution is to *narrow* the union with code, the same as you would in JavaScript without type annotations. *Narrowing* occurs when TypeScript can deduce a more specific type for a value based on the structure of the code.

For example, TypeScript knows that only a `string` value will have a `typeof` value `"string"`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printId(id: number | string): void' >printId</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id: string | number'>id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code></pre>
```

```
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span
style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id:
string | number' >id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"string"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// In this
branch, id is of type &apos;string&apos;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) id: string' >id</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string'
>toUpperCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// Here, id is of type
&apos;number&apos;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id: number' >id</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwE4zFAkgEwBQw4BciYIAtgEY'
</div></pre>
```

Another example is to use a function like `Array.isArray` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
welcomePeople(x: string[] | string): void' >welcomePeople</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | string[]'
>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">[] | </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span
style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Array:
ArrayConstructor' >Array</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
```

```

style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) ArrayConstructor.isArray(arg: any): arg is any[]'
>isArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | string[]' >x</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">)) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #008000">>// Here: &apos;x&apos; is &apos;string[]&apos;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Hello, "</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string[]' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&lt;string>.join(separator?: string | undefined): string' >join</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">" and "</span><span
style="color: #000000">));</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #008000">>//
Here: &apos;x&apos; is &apos;string&apos;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Welcome lone traveler "
</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAAdwKYBsJwLaoAqpwAO6qAFAB
</div></pre>

```

Notice that in the `else` branch, we don't need to do anything special - if `x` wasn't a `string[]`, then it must have been a `string`.

Sometimes you'll have a union where all the members have something in common. For example, both arrays and strings have a `slice` method. If every member in a union has a property in common, you can use that property without narrowing:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">>// Return type is
inferred as number[] | string</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getFirstThree(x: number[] | string): string | number[]'
>getFirstThree</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number[]' >x</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span

```

```

style="color: #000000">[] | </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number[]' >x</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) slice(start?: number | undefined, end?: number | undefined): string | number[]'
>slice</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAECUFMBcFcCb2poE8AOIQEsDOPEAzSeeSAE1AEN
IQEpQAb2GhQZOEIB6AdLgA22CboAGABpQAGZrAG5hAF8gA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

It might be confusing that a *union* of types appears to have the *intersection* of those types' properties. This is not an accident - the name *union* comes from type theory. The *union* `number | string` is composed by taking the union of the *values* from each type. Notice that given two sets with corresponding facts about each set, only the *intersection* of those facts applies to the *union* of the sets themselves. For example, if we had a room of tall people wearing hats, and another room of Spanish speakers wearing hats, after combining those rooms, the only thing we know about *every* person is that they must be wearing a hat.

## Type Aliases

We've been using object types and union types by writing them directly in type annotations. This is convenient, but it's common to want to use the same type more than once and refer to it by a single name.

A *type alias* is exactly that - a *name* for any *type*. The syntax for a type alias is:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Point
= {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >Point</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number' >x</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number' >y</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span

```

```

style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
printCoord(pt: Point): void' >printCoord</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type Point = {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >Point</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "The coordinate's x
value is "</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='(parameter) pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "The coordinate's y value is "</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
printCoord(pt: Point): void' >printCoord</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">({
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number' >x</data-lsp>:
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 100</span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
y: number' >y</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#098658"> 100</span> <span style="color: #000000"> });</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACg9gSwHbCgXigbwFBSgDwC4okBXAWCCGPHCKSJi4xNT09y9s3IKmErKKqCqoGvq-aJAW7A5sbEdnN0zvTAJiAEYABj2AGiZdg6gOFqA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

You can actually use a type alias to give a name to any type at all, not just an object type. For example, a type alias can name a union type:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type ID =
string | number' >ID</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'

```

[href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAkgIIAvFAdgVwLYCMICcoA+UAzsLgJYoDr](https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAkgIIAvFAdgVwLYCMICcoA+UAzsLgJYoDr)  
</div></pre>

Note that aliases are *only* aliases - you cannot use type aliases to create different/distinct "versions" of the same type. When you use the alias, it's exactly as if you had written the aliased type. In other words, this code might *look* illegal, but is OK according to TypeScript because both types are aliases for the same type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
UserInputSanitizedString = string' >UserInputSanitizedString</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function sanitizelInput(str: string): UserInputSanitizedString'
>sanitizelInput</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) str: string' >str</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:
#000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type UserInputSanitizedString
= string' >UserInputSanitizedString</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function sanitize(str: string): string' >sanitize</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) str:
string' >str</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000">// Create a sanitized input</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let userInput: string' >userInput</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function sanitizelInput(str:
string): UserInputSanitizedString' >sanitizelInput</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getInput(): string'
>getInput</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Can still be re-assigned with a string
though</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let
userInput: string' >userInput</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"new input"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwHMQMBJvAB2
c42krMwARNdbgMVoDOEA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

# Interfaces

An *interface declaration* is another way to name an object type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Point' >Point</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printCoord(pt: Point): void' >printCoord</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Point' >Point</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"The coordinate&apos;s x value is "</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"The coordinate&apos;s y value is "</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printCoord(pt: Point): void' >printCoord</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp>:</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">100</span></span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span>
```



```
style="color: #098658"> 100</span> <span style="color: #000000"> });</span> </div> </code> <a  
class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgAoHtRmQbwFDLIAeAXMiAK  
oHByKHI4VGqpszx3LySMtnKOMRkAlwADO0ANCxtnchc8UA'> Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

Just like when we used a type alias above, the example works just as if we had used an anonymous object type. TypeScript is only concerned with the *structure* of the value we passed to `printCoord` - it only cares that it has the expected properties. Being concerned only with the structure and capabilities of types is why we call TypeScript a *structurally typed* system.

## Differences Between Type Aliases and Interfaces

Type aliases and interfaces are very similar, and in many cases you can choose between them freely. Almost all features of an `interface` are available in `type`, the key distinction is that a type cannot be re-opened to add new properties vs an interface which is always extendable.

<code>Interface</code>	<code>Type</code>
<p>Extending an interface</p> <pre>interface Animal { name: string } interface Bear extends Animal { honey: boolean } const bear = getBear() bear.name bear.honey</pre>	<p>Extending a type via intersections</p> <pre>type Animal = { name: string } type Bear = Animal &amp; {   honey: Boolean } const bear = getBear() bear.name bear.honey</pre>
<p>Adding new fields to an existing interface</p> <pre>interface Window {   title: string } interface Window { ts: TypeScriptAPI } const src = 'const a = "Hello World"; window.ts.transpileModule(src, {});</pre>	<p>A type cannot be changed after being created</p> <pre>type Window = { title: string } type Window = { ts: TypeScriptAPI } // Error: Duplicate identifier 'Window'.</pre>

You'll learn more about these concepts in later chapters, so don't worry if you don't understand all of these right away.

- Prior to TypeScript version 4.2, type alias names [may appear in error messages](#), sometimes in place of the equivalent anonymous type (which may or may not be desirable). Interfaces will always be named in error messages.
- Type aliases may not participate [in declaration merging, but interfaces can](#).
- Interfaces may only be used to [declare the shapes of object, not re-name primitives](#).
- Interface names will [always appear in their original form](#) in error messages, but *only* when they are used by name.

For the most part, you can choose based on personal preference, and TypeScript will tell you if it needs something to be the other kind of declaration. If you would like a heuristic, use `interface`

until you need to use features from `type`.

## Type Assertions

Sometimes you will have information about the type of a value that TypeScript can't know about.

For example, if you're using `document.getElementById`, TypeScript only knows that this will return *some* kind of `HTMLElement`, but you might know that your page will always have an `HTMLCanvasElement` with a given ID.

In this situation, you can use a *type assertion* to specify a more specific type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
myCanvas: HTMLCanvasElement'>myCanvas</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
= </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var document: Document'
>document</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Document.getElementById(elementId: string): HTMLElement |
null'>getElementById</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #A31515">"main_canvas"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface HTMLCanvasElement'>HTMLCanvasElement</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLgBATgTwMIEMwDcURgXhgExGAFc4BTMK
AJQwsMABIAVALIAZVBizNWFKAG4gA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

Like a type annotation, type assertions are removed by the compiler and won't affect the runtime behavior of your code.

You can also use the angle-bracket syntax (except if the code is in a `.tsx` file), which is equivalent:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
myCanvas: HTMLCanvasElement'>myCanvas</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
= &lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface HTMLCanvasElement'
>HTMLCanvasElement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var document: Document'>document</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Document.getElementById(elementId: string): HTMLElement | null'>getElementById</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"main_canvas"
</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLgBATgTwMIEMwDcURgXhgHgAkAVAWQB  
</div></pre>

Reminder: Because type assertions are removed at compile-time, there is no runtime checking associated with a type assertion. There won't be an exception or `null` generated if the type assertion is wrong.

TypeScript only allows type assertions which convert to a *more specific* or *less specific* version of a type. This rule prevents "impossible" coercions like:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Conversion of type 'string' to type 'number' may be a mistake because neither type sufficiently overlaps with the other. If this was intentional, convert the expression to 'unknown' first.</span><span class="code">2352</span></span><span class="error-behind">Conversion of type 'string' to type 'number' may be a mistake because neither type sufficiently overlaps with the other. If this was intentional, convert the expression to 'unknown' first.</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCDoe2gZwFygEwGYCsaBQBjOAO0QBdQAP</div></pre>
```

Sometimes this rule can be too conservative and will disallow more complex coercions that might be valid. If this happens, you can use two assertions, first to `any` (or `unknown`, which we'll introduce later), then to the desired type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const a: T'>a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const expr: any'>expr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type T = {&#13; a: 1;&#13; b: 2;&#13; c: 3;&#13;}'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEYD2A7AzgF3iAHgBxgC54oUBPAbgC</div></pre>
```

## Literal Types

In addition to the general types `string` and `number`, we can refer to *specific* strings and numbers in type positions.

One way to think about this is to consider how JavaScript comes with different ways to declare a variable. Both `var` and `let` allow for changing what is held inside the variable, and `const` does not. This is reflected in how TypeScript creates types for literals.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let changingString: string'> changingString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Hello World" </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let changingString: string'> changingString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Olá, Mundo" </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // Because `changingString` can represent any possible string, that</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // is how TypeScript describes it in the type system</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let changingString: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> changingString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> let changingString: string</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const constantString: &quot;Hello World&quot;'> constantString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Hello World" </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // Because `constantString` can only represent 1 possible string, it</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // has a literal type representation</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const constantString: &quot;Hello World&quot;'> constantString</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> const constantString: "Hello World"</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/DYUwLgBAxgFghgOwOYEtkGUwCc1lgXggCIAJEYYAev6IYMZ8hKTkVLT0THKdqpaOvqjYOOTpuYIEIPALla2uSAOEACMrU6ePtUBSMHFETfw0XAQwMUgWHDAI'> </div> </pre>
```

By themselves, literal types aren't very valuable:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: &quot;hello&quot;'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "hello" </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span>
```

```

style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// OK</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: &quot;hello&quot;'>x</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// ...
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='let x:
&quot;hello&quot;'>x</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #A31515">"howdy"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><span class="error"><span>Type ""howdy"" is not assignable to type ""hello".</span>
<span class="code">2322</span></span><span class="error-behind">Type ""howdy"" is not
assignable to type ""hello".</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFABtIXUAD1QCIALS
</div></pre>

```

It's not much use to have a variable that can only have one value!

But by *combining* literals into unions, you can express a much more useful concept - for example, functions that only accept a certain set of known values:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printText(s: string, alignment: &quot;left&quot; | &quot;right&quot; |
&quot;center&quot;): void'>printText</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string'
>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) alignment: &quot;left&quot; | &quot;right&quot; |
&quot;center&quot;'>alignment</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:
</span><span style="color: #A31515">"left"</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"right"</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"center"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printText(s: string, alignment:
&quot;left&quot; | &quot;right&quot; | &quot;center&quot;): void'
>printText</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Hello, world"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"left"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printText(s: string, alignment:
&quot;left&quot; | &quot;right&quot; | &quot;center&quot;): void'
>printText</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"G&apos;day, mate"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span
style="color: #A31515"><data-err>&quot;centre&quot;</data-err></span><span style="color:

```

```
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Argument of type "'centre'" is not
assignable to parameter of type "'left' | 'right' | 'center'".</span> <span
class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Argument of type "'centre'" is
not assignable to parameter of type "'left' | 'right' | 'center'".</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAGYCuAdgMY'
</div> </pre>
```

Numeric literal types work the same way:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
compare(a: string, b: string): -1 | 0 | 1' >compare</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: string'
>a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) b: string' >b</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">): -</span>
<span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color:
#098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a:
string' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) b: string' >b</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> ? </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000"> :
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: string' >a</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) b: string' >b</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ? </span>
<span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000"> : -</span> <span
style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLGlg9mABBObbADgQwE4FMAUmAXIgM5'
</div> </pre>
```

Of course, you can combine these with non-literal types:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Options' >Options</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Options.width: number' >width</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
```

```

#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function configure(x: Options |
&quot;auto&quot;): void' >configure</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: Options |
&quot;auto&quot;' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Options' >Options</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"auto"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000">>// ...</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function configure(x: Options | &quot;auto&quot;): void' >configure</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">({ </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Options.width: number' >width</data-lsp>: </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">100</span> <span style="color: #000000"> });
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
configure(x: Options | &quot;auto&quot;): void' >configure</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"auto"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-
lsp lsp='function configure(x: Options | &quot;auto&quot;): void' >configure</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> <data-
err>&quot;automatic&quot;</data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div>
<span class="error"> <span>Argument of type ""automatic"" is not assignable to parameter of type
'Options | "auto"'.</span> <span class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Argument of type ""automatic"" is not assignable to parameter of type 'Options | "auto"'.
</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAJYB2ALjAGYC
</div> </pre>

```

There's one more kind of literal type: boolean literals. There are only two boolean literal types, and as you might guess, they are the types `true` and `false`. The type `boolean` itself is actually just an alias for the union `true | false`.

## Literal Inference

When you initialize a variable with an object, TypeScript assumes that the properties of that object might change values later. For example, if you wrote code like this:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const obj:
{&#13; counter: number;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:

```

```
#000000"> = { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) counter: number'
> counter</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000"> };</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #AF00DB"> if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ( </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const someCondition: boolean' >someCondition</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const obj: {&#13; counter:
number;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) counter: number' >counter</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 1 </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEYD2A7AzgF3mpBbEAWqsAJYYmoBc
ALR9gBXDHx5tk6LEhoAreAF54Ab0RIBKDCBjUADPAC+7EgDN4AChz4iKUuVQBKJW3jwp0gHTI1GmPPgE
</div> </pre>
```

TypeScript doesn't assume the assignment of `1` to a field which previously had `0` is an error. Another way of saying this is that `obj.counter` must have the type `number`, not `0`, because types are used to determine both *reading* and *writing* behavior.

The same applies to strings:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const req:
{&#13; url: string;&#13; method: string;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) url:
string' >url</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> "https://example.com"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) method: string' >method</data-lsp>:</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "GET"</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> };</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-
lsp lsp='function handleRequest(url: string, method: &quot;GET&quot; |
&quot;POST&quot;): void' >handleRequest</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; url:
string;&#13; method: string;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) url: string'
>url</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; url: string;&#13; method: string;&#13;}'
>req</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) method: string' >method</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Argument of type 'string' is not
assignable to parameter of type '"GET" | "POST"'</span> <span class="code"> 2345</span>
</span> <span class="error-behind">Argument of type 'string' is not assignable to parameter of
```



```
type ""GET" | "POST"".</span></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCDoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUACaQDGANglIA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

In the above example `req.method` is inferred to be `string`, not `"GET"`. Because code can be evaluated between the creation of `req` and the call of `handleRequest` which could assign a new string like `"GUESS"` to `req.method`, TypeScript considers this code to have an error.

There are two ways to work around this.

1. You can change the inference by adding a type assertion in either location:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color:
#000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000"> // Change 1:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; url: string;&#13; method:
&#13; &quot;GET&#13;';&#13;}' >req</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) url: string'
>url</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"https://example.com"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) method: &quot;GET&quot;'
>method</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"GET"</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"GET"</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #008000"> // Change 2</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function handleRequest(url: string, method:
&quot;GET&quot; | &quot;POST&quot;): void' >handleRequest</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; url: string;&#13; method:
&quot;GET&quot;;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) url: string'
>url</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; url: string;&#13; method:
&quot;GET&quot;;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) method:
&quot;GET&quot;' >method</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"GET"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwAspVglQ/s27AYSJ8EARjZLMDwGeDgqeABeeABveBZ2dQIMDAAHOjZbEAAPKCFUsgA6YKEpQRExCWI5JXgoC
</div></pre>
```

Change 1 means "I intend for `req.method` to always have the *literal type* `"GET"`", preventing the possible assignment of `"GUESS"` to that field after. Change 2 means "I know for other reasons that `req.method` has the value `"GET"`".

2. You can use `as const` to convert the entire object to be type literals:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; readonly url: &quot;https://example.com&quot;;&#13; readonly method: &quot;GET&quot;;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) url: &quot;https://example.com&quot;' >url</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"https://example.com"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) method: &quot;GET&quot;' >method</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"GET"</span><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='any' >const</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function handleRequest(url: string, method: &quot;GET&quot; | &quot;POST&quot;): void' >handleRequest</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; readonly url: &quot;https://example.com&quot;;&#13; readonly method: &quot;GET&quot;;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) url: &quot;https://example.com&quot;' >url</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const req: {&#13; readonly url: &quot;https://example.com&quot;;&#13; readonly method: &quot;GET&quot;;&#13;}' >req</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) method: &quot;GET&quot;' >method</data-lsp>  
</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwAspVglQ/uWweBvDhV4AXngAb3gWdnUCDAwABzo2WxAADyghaLIAOk8hKUERMQlpeSV4AF94KDp4T1QG  
</div></pre>
```

The `as const` suffix acts like `const` but for the type system, ensuring that all properties are assigned the literal type instead of a more general version like `string` or `number`.

# null and undefined

JavaScript has two primitive values used to signal absent or uninitialized value: `null` and `undefined`.

TypeScript has two corresponding *types* by the same names. How these types behave depends on whether you have the `strictNullChecks` option on.

## `strictNullChecks` off

With `strictNullChecks` *off*, values that might be `null` or `undefined` can still be accessed normally, and the values `null` and `undefined` can be assigned to a property of any type. This is similar to how languages without null checks (e.g. C#, Java) behave. The lack of checking for these values tends to be a major source of bugs; we always recommend people turn `strictNullChecks` on if it's practical to do so in their codebase.

## `strictNullChecks` on

With `strictNullChecks` *on*, when a value is `null` or `undefined`, you will need to test for those values before using methods or properties on that value. Just like checking for `undefined` before using an optional property, we can use *narrowing* to check for values that might be `null`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function doSomething(x: string | null): void'>doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | null'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #000000">void</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">  if</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | null'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #0000FF">null</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">  // do nothing</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">  else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">    </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, "</span><span style="color: #000000">+ </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
```

```

lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string'>toUpperCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAEdgZTgWwKZQBYxgDmAFAB4B</div></pre>

```

## Non-null Assertion Operator (Postfix `!`)

TypeScript also has a special syntax for removing `null` and `undefined` from a type without doing any explicit checking. Writing `!` after any expression is effectively a type assertion that the value isn't `null` or `undefined`:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function liveDangerously(x?: number | null | undefined): void'>liveDangerously</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number | null | undefined'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>// No error</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number | null | undefined'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)!</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Number.toFixed(fractionDigits?: number | undefined): string'>toFixed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number | null | undefined'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAGxgNwKYBECGYDmGATnCAM7</div></pre>

```

Just like other type assertions, this doesn't change the runtime behavior of your code, so it's important to only use `!` when you know that the value *can't* be `null` or `undefined`.

## Enums

Enums are a feature added to JavaScript by TypeScript which allows for describing a value which could be one of a set of possible named constants. Unlike most TypeScript features, this is *not* a

type-level addition to JavaScript but something added to the language and runtime. Because of this, it's a feature which you should know exists, but maybe hold off on using unless you are sure. You can read more about enums in the [Enum reference page](#).

## Less Common Primitives

It's worth mentioning the rest of the primitives in JavaScript which are represented in the type system. Though we will not go into depth here.

### **bigint**

From ES2020 onwards, there is a primitive in JavaScript used for very large integers, `BigInt` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Creating a bigint via the BigInt function</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const oneHundred: bigint'>oneHundred</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">bigint</span><span style="color: #000000">=</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var BigInt: BigIntConstructor&#13;(value: string | number | bigint | boolean) => bigint'>BigInt</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Creating a BigInt via the literal syntax</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const anotherHundred: bigint'>anotherHundred</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">bigint</span><span style="color: #000000">=</span><span style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #0000FF">n</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEBcEMCchMCMkBcpEGcBMAGXAofEUAYVkWkcFG6NAaIRsys7BagDjg0LkA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

You can learn more about `BigInt` in [the TypeScript 3.2 release notes](#).

### **symbol**

There is a primitive in JavaScript used to create a globally unique reference via the function `Symbol()` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const firstName: typeof firstName'>firstName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">=</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Symbol: SymbolConstructor&#13;
```

```

(description?: string | number | undefined) => symbol' >Symbol</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"name"</span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const secondName: typeof secondName' >secondName</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Symbol:
SymbolConstructor&#13;(description?: string | number | undefined) => symbol'
>Symbol</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"name"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const firstName: typeof firstName' >firstName</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='const secondName: typeof secondName' >secondName</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error"><span>This condition will always
return 'false' since the types 'typeof firstName' and 'typeof secondName' have no overlap.</span>
<span class="code">2367</span></span><span class="error-behind">This condition will always
return 'false' since the types 'typeof firstName' and 'typeof secondName' have no overlap.</span>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>//
Can't ever happen</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYBsB2AUAMZwB2iALqA
</div></pre>

```

You can learn more about them in [Symbols reference page](#).

# Narrowing

Imagine we have a function called `padLeft`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function padLeft(padding: number | string, input: string): string'>padLeft</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string | number'>padding</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string'>input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">throw</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Error: ErrorConstructor&#13;new (message?: string | undefined) => Error'>Error</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Not implemented yet!"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwIYBMAYBTYUUAUa66MYA5gF'></div></pre>
```

If `padding` is a `number`, it will treat that as the number of spaces we want to prepend to `input`. If `padding` is a `string`, it should just prepend `padding` to `input`. Let's try to implement the logic for when `padLeft` is passed a `number` for `padding`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function padLeft(padding: number | string, input: string): string'>padLeft</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string | number'>padding</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string'>input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
```

```

</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Array: ArrayConstructor&#13;new &lt;any>
(..items: any[]) => any[] (+2 overloads)' >Array</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string |
number' >padding</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span
style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">).</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;any>.join(separator?: string | undefined): string'
>join</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">" "</span> <span style="color: #000000">) + </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Operator '+' cannot be applied to types
'string | number' and 'number'.</span> <span class="code">2365</span> </span> <span
class="error-behind">Operator '+' cannot be applied to types 'string | number' and 'number'.
</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYBsBWAUAGYCuAdgMY.
</div> </pre>

```

Uh-oh, we're getting an error on `padding + 1`. TypeScript is warning us that adding a `number` to a `number | string` might not give us what we want, and it's right. In other words, we haven't explicitly checked if `padding` is a `number` first, nor are we handling the case where it's a `string`, so let's do exactly that.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
padLeft(padding: number | string, input: string): string' >padLeft</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
padding: string | number' >padding</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string | number' >padding</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"number"</span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Array:

```



```

ArrayConstructor&#13;new (arrayLength?: number | undefined) => any[] (+2 overloads)'
>Array</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: number' >padding</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color:
#000000">).</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&#13;any>.join(separator?: string | undefined): string' >join</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">" "</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)+ </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string'
>input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string' >padding</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwIYBMAYBTYUUAUa66MYA5gF
</div> </pre>

```

If this mostly looks like uninteresting JavaScript code, that's sort of the point. Apart from the annotations we put in place, this TypeScript code looks like JavaScript. The idea is that TypeScript's type system aims to make it as easy as possible to write typical JavaScript code without bending over backwards to get type safety.

While it might not look like much, there's actually a lot going under the covers here. Much like how TypeScript analyzes runtime values using static types, it overlays type analysis on JavaScript's runtime control flow constructs like `if/else`, conditional ternaries, loops, truthiness checks, etc., which can all affect those types.

Within our `if` check, TypeScript sees `typeof padding === "number"` and understands that as a special form of code called a *type guard*. TypeScript follows possible paths of execution that our programs can take to analyze the most specific possible type of a value at a given position. It looks at these special checks (called *type guards*) and assignments, and the process of refining types to more specific types than declared is called *narrowing*. In many editors we can observe these types as they change, and we'll even do so in our examples.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
padLeft(padding: number | string, input: string): string' >padLeft</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
padding: string | number' >padding</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span>

```

```

style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string | number' >padding</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"number"</span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Array:
ArrayConstructor&#13;new (arrayLength?: number | undefined) => any[] (+2 overloads)'
>Array</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>padding</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span
style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">).</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;any>.join(separator?: string | undefined): string'
>join</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">" "</span> <span style="color: #000000">) + </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> (parameter) padding: number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string' style='border-bottom: solid
2px lightgrey;'>padding</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (parameter) padding: string</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwIYBMAYBTYUUAUa66MYA5gF
FkAvln2js4ogbyhgmDCUJmKuQWlCuVAA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

There are a couple of different constructs TypeScript understands for narrowing.

## typeof type guards

As we've seen, JavaScript supports a `typeof` operator which can give very basic information about the type of values we have at runtime. TypeScript expects this to return a certain set of strings:

- `"string"`
- `"number"`

- "bigint"
- "boolean"
- "symbol"
- "undefined"
- "object"
- "function"

Like we saw with `padLeft`, this operator comes up pretty often in a number of JavaScript libraries, and TypeScript can understand it to narrow types in different branches.

In TypeScript, checking against the value returned by `typeof` is a type guard. Because TypeScript encodes how `typeof` operates on different values, it knows about some of its quirks in JavaScript. For example, notice that in the list above, `typeof` doesn't return the string `null`. Check out the following example:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printAll(strs: string | string[] | null): void' >printAll</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string |
string[] | null' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> |</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">[] |</span><span
style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs:
string | string[] | null' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ===</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"object"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">for</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">of</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string[] | null' >strs</data-
lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error">
<span>Object is possibly 'null'.</span><span class="code">2531</span></span><span
class="error-behind">Object is possibly 'null'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const s:
string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
} </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string' >strs</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"string"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string'
>strs</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000">>// do nothing</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMBGAUAGYCuAdgMY
</div> </pre>

```

In the `printAll` function, we try to check if `strs` is an object to see if it's an array type (now might be a good time to reinforce that arrays are object types in JavaScript). But it turns out that in JavaScript, `typeof null` is actually `"object"`! This is one of those unfortunate accidents of history.

Users with enough experience might not be surprised, but not everyone has run into this in JavaScript; luckily, TypeScript lets us know that `strs` was only narrowed down to `string[] | null` instead of just `string[]`.

This might be a good segue into what we'll call "truthiness" checking.

## Truthiness narrowing

Truthiness might not be a word you'll find in the dictionary, but it's very much something you'll hear about in JavaScript.

In JavaScript, we can use any expression in conditionals, `&&` s, `||` s, `if` statements, and Boolean negations (`!`), and more. As an example, `if` statements don't expect their condition to always have the type `boolean`.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
getUsersOnlineMessage(numUsersOnline: number): string' >getUsersOnlineMessage</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) numUsersOnline: number' >numUsersOnline</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) numUsersOnline: number'
>numUsersOnline</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">`There are </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) numUsersOnline: number' >numUsersOnline</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> online
now!`</span> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"Nobody's here. :("</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAacwKZQKoGdUCcsDyYANjGKgLf
OAHcAhAYBuaUQXYJ0oPSQAlgA5OEE4ABMATwByLEQzHQA6RB4GKKCXIA'>Try</a> </div>
</pre>

```

In JavaScript, constructs like `if` first "coerce" their conditions to `boolean`s to make sense of them, and then choose their branches depending on whether the result is `true` or `false`. Values like

- `0`
- `NaN`
- `""` (the empty string)
- `0n` (the `bigint` version of zero)
- `null`
- `undefined`

all coerce to `false`, and other values get coerced `true`. You can always coerce values to `boolean`s by running them through the `Boolean` function, or by using the shorter double-Boolean negation. (The latter has the advantage that TypeScript infers a narrow literal boolean type `true`, while inferring the first as type `boolean`.)

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// both of these result in &apos;true&apos;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Boolean: BooleanConstructor&amp;#13;&amp;lt;string>(value?: string | undefined) => boolean'>Boolean</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span><span style="color: #008000">// type: boolean, value: true</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">!!</span><span style="color: #A31515">"world"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span><span style="color: #008000">// type: true, value: true</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAECMHsBcAtUgM1HApgZ1aATHgrgDbSgCWAdqAC</div></pre>
```

It's fairly popular to leverage this behavior, especially for guarding against values like `null` or `undefined`. As an example, let's try using it for our `printAll` function.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printAll(strs: string | string[] | null): void'>printAll</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[] | null'>strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> |</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">[]</span><span style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[] | null'>strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[]'>strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ===</span><span style="color: #A31515">"object"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">for</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const s: string'>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">of</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string[]'>strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const s: string'>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></code>
```

```

</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string | null' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"string"</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string' >strs</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwE4zFAggGxwCgGcpVCAuRY!
</div></pre>

```

You'll notice that we've gotten rid of the error above by checking if `strs` is truthy. This at least prevents us from dreaded errors when we run our code like:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">txt</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: undefined">TypeError: null is not iterable</span></div></code></div></pre>

```

Keep in mind though that truthiness checking on primitives can often be error prone. As an example, consider a different attempt at writing `printAll`

```

<pre class="shiki do-not-do-this light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color:
#000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line dim'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printAll(strs: string | string[] | null): void' >printAll</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[] | null' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">
| </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">[] |
</span><span style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span>
</div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#008000">>// !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #008000">>// DON'T DO THIS!</span></div><div class='line
dim'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>// KEEP
READING</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #008000">>// !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000">

```

```

(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[] | null'
>strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div class='line dim'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span
style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs:
string | string[]' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"object"</span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div
class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">for</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">of</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string[]' >strs</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const s: string' >s</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color:
#000000"> }</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
=== </span><span style="color: #A31515">"string"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string' >strs</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color:
#000000"> }</span></div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span>
</div><div class='line dim'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwE4zFAggGxwCgGcpVCAuRY!
ELYgtzQA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

We wrapped the entire body of the function in a truthy check, but this has a subtle downside: we may no longer be handling the empty string case correctly.

TypeScript doesn't hurt us here at all, but this is behavior worth noting if you're less familiar with JavaScript. TypeScript can often help you catch bugs early on, but if you choose to do *nothing* with a value, there's only so much that it can do without being overly prescriptive. If you want, you can make sure you handle situations like these with a linter.



One last word on narrowing by truthiness is that Boolean negations with `!` filter out from negated branches.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function multiplyAll(values: number[] | undefined, factor: number): number[] | undefined'>multiplyAll</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: number[] | undefined'>values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">undefined</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) factor: number'>factor</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">[] |</span><span style="color: #267F99">undefined</span><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: number[] | undefined'>values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: undefined'>values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: number[]'>values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;number>.map&lt;number>(callbackfn: (value: number, index: number, array: number[]) => number, thisArg?: any): number[]'>map</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #0000FF">=</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">*</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) factor: number'>factor</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAWxAG1gBzQTWlJpoAUAUlogG4'></div></pre>
```

# Equality narrowing

TypeScript also uses `switch` statements and equality checks like `===`, `!==`, `==`, and `!=` to narrow types. For example:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function example(x: string | number, y: string | boolean): void' >example</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number' >x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: string | boolean' >y</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number' >x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: string | boolean' >y</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #008000">// We can now call any &apos;string&apos; method on &apos;x&apos; or &apos;y&apos;.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>toUpperCase</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'> </div>(method) String.toUpperCase(): string</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: string' >y</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toLowerCase(): string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>toLowerCase</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'> </div>(method) String.toLowerCase(): string</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div
```

```

class='arrow'></div>(parameter) x: string | number</span> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) y: string | boolean' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>y</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span>
<span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>(parameter) y: string | boolean</span> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAUwB4EMC2AHANsgCIQC5EBnI
</div></pre>

```

When we checked that `x` and `y` are both equal in the above example, TypeScript knew their types also had to be equal. Since `string` is the only common type that both `x` and `y` could take on, TypeScript knows that `x` and `y` must be a `string` in the first branch.

Checking against specific literal values (as opposed to variables) works also. In our section about truthiness narrowing, we wrote a `printAll` function which was error-prone because it accidentally didn't handle empty strings properly. Instead we could have done a specific check to block out `null`s, and TypeScript still correctly removes `null` from the type of `strs`.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
printAll(strs: string | string[] | null): void' >printAll</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string |
string[] | null' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">[] | </span><span
style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[] | null' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> !== </span><span style="color: #0000FF">null</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) strs: string | string[]' >strs</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"object"</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">for</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">

```

```

<data-lsp lsp='const s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">of</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) str: string[]' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>str</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><span
class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>(parameter)
str: string[]</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) str: string' >str</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
=== </span><span style="color: #A31515">"string"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) str: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>str</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span
class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>(parameter)
str: string</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABABwE4zFAggGxwCgGcpVCAuRY!
</div></pre>

```

JavaScript's looser equality checks with `==` and `!=` also get narrowed correctly. If you're unfamiliar, checking whether something `== null` actually not only checks whether it is specifically the value `null` - it also checks whether it's potentially `undefined`. The same applies to `== undefined`: it checks whether a value is either `null` or `undefined`.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Container' >Container</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Container.value: number | null | undefined' >value</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color:

```

```

#000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99">undefined</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function multiplyValue(container: Container,
factor: number): void' > multiplyValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) container: Container' > container</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='interface Container' > Container</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) factor: number' > factor</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> number</span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000"> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> if</span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) container: Container'
> container</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Container.value: number | null | undefined' > value</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> != </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> null</span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' > console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' > log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) container:
Container' > container</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Container.value: number' style='border-bottom:
solid 2px lightgrey;'> value</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>
(property) Container.value: number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000"> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) container: Container'
> container</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Container.value: number | null | undefined' > value</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> * = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) factor: number' > factor</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMIHtx1NZBvAKGWQDc4AbA
</div> </pre>

```

The `in` operator narrowing

Javascript has an operator for determining if an object has a property with a name: the `in` operator. TypeScript takes this into account as a way to narrow down potential types.

For example, with the code: `"value" in x`. where `"value"` is a string literal and `x` is a union type. The `"true"` branch narrows `x`'s types which have either an optional or required property `value`, and the `"false"` branch narrows to types which have an optional or missing property `value`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) swim: () => void'>swim</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Bird = {&#13; fly: () => void;&#13;}' >Bird</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) fly: () => void'>fly</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function move(animal: Fish | Bird): void'>move</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #000000"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Fish | Bird'>animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Bird = {&#13; fly: () => void;&#13;}' >Bird</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span><span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #0000FF">in</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Fish | Bird'>animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span><span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Fish'>animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) swim: () => void'>swim</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
```

```

animal: Bird' >animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) fly: () => void' >fly</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYglgZwBZQLxQN5QQdzgWwC4oAKASjc
</div></pre>

```

To re-iterate optional properties will exist in both sides for narrowing, for example a human could both swim and fly (with the right equipment) and thus should show up in both sides of the `in` check:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish =
{&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) swim: () => void'
>swim</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: () </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Bird = {&#13; fly: () => void;&#13;}' >Bird</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) fly: () => void' >fly</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: () </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Human = {&#13; swim?: (() => void) |
undefined;&#13; fly?: (() => void) | undefined;&#13;}' >Human</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) swim?: (() => void) | undefined' >swim</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">?: () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span>
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) fly?: (() => void) | undefined'
>fly</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: () </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function move(animal: Fish | Bird | Human): void'
>move</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Fish | Bird | Human' >animal</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish =
{&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Bird = {&#13; fly: ()

```

```
=> void;&#13;}' >Bird</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Human = {&#13; swim?: (() => void) | undefined;&#13; fly?: (() => void) | undefined;&#13;}' >Human</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "swim" </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> in</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Fish | Bird | Human' > animal</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Fish | Human' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> animal</data-lsp> </span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (parameter) animal: Fish | Human</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> else</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) animal: Bird | Human' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> animal</data-lsp> </span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (parameter) animal: Bird | Human</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYglgZwBZQLxQN5QQdzgWwC4oAKASjCNacOotdoDGwOHV18OholEh0CTXFieGQoAB8+QWYE9S1tCgwOAZhRUgAiXAI8qDhdck1xDKgsyhyyl4/'></div> </pre>
```

## instanceof narrowing

JavaScript has an operator for checking whether or not a value is an "instance" of another value. More specifically, in JavaScript `x instanceof Foo` checks whether the *prototype chain* of `x` contains `Foo.prototype`. While we won't dive deep here, and you'll see more of this when we get into classes, they can still be useful for most values that can be constructed with `new`. As you might have guessed, `instanceof` is also a type guard, and TypeScript narrows in branches guarded by `instanceof` `s`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function logValue(x: Date | string): void' > logValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | Date' > x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> :</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Date' > Date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> string</span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> if</span>
```



```

<span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: string | Date' >x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">instanceof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Date: DateConstructor' >Date</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: Date'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Date.toUTCString(): string'
>toUTCString</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div><span
class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'> </div>(parameter) x:
Date</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
String.toUpperCase(): string' >toUpperCase</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">());
</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div
class='arrow'> </div>(parameter) x: string</span> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAGzgcwGoENkgKYAUAHgFyIAiW
JQHonSt0oB6AfkcbfRHjIddSKSiri6lo6egaGAA5xeMymWMEEtg5uLu7u3n68vkA'>Try</a></div>
</pre>

```

## Assignments

As we mentioned earlier, when we assign to any variable, TypeScript looks at the right side of the assignment and narrows the left side appropriately.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string |
number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'
>Math</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random(): number' >random</data-lsp> </span><span

```

```

style="color: #000000">() &lt; </span> <span style="color: #098658">0.5</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> ? </span> <span style="color: #098658">10</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello world!"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: string | number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console'>console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let
x: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"goodbye!"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console'>console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let
x: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: string</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/DYUwLgBAHhC8EFkCGYAWA6ATkgdgEwHsBbACgEol/
</div> </pre>

```

Notice that each of these assignments is valid. Even though the observed type of `x` changed to `number` after our first assignment, we were still able to assign a `string` to `x`. This is because the *declared type* of `x` - the type that `x` started with - is `string | number`, and assignability is always checked against the declared type.

If we'd assigned a `boolean` to `x`, we'd have seen an error since that wasn't part of the declared type.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string |
number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'
>Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random(): number'>random</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">() &lt; </span> <span style="color: #098658">0.5</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> ? </span> <span style="color: #098658">10</span> <span style="color:

```

```
#000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello world!"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: string | number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 1</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console'> console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'> log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let
x: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-err> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number'> x</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> true</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Type 'boolean' is not
assignable to type 'string | number'.</span> <span class="code">2322</span> </span> <span
class="error-behind">Type 'boolean' is not assignable to type 'string | number'.</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'> console</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'> log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);
</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: string | number</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFABtIAXUAD1AF5QB
</div> </pre>
```

## Control flow analysis

Up until this point, we've gone through some basic examples of how TypeScript narrows within specific branches. But there's a bit more going on than just walking up from every variable and looking for type guards in `if` s, `while` s, conditionals, etc. For example

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
padLeft(padding: number | string, input: string): string'> padLeft</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
padding: string | number'> padding</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> string</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string'> input</data-lsp> </span>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string | number' >padding</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"number"</span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Array:
ArrayConstructor&#13;new (arrayLength?: number | undefined) => any[] (+2 overloads)'
>Array</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: number' >padding</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color:
#000000">).</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&#13;any>.join(separator?: string | undefined): string' >join</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">" "</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)+ </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: string'
>input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) padding: string' >padding</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) input: string' >input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgGlg9mABABwIYBMAyBTYUUAUa66MYA5gF
</div> </pre>

```

`padLeft` returns from within its first `if` block. TypeScript was able to analyze this code and see that the rest of the body (`return padding + input;`) is *unreachable* in the case where `padding` is a `number`. As a result, it was able to remove `number` from the type of `padding` (narrowing from `string | number` to `string`) for the rest of the function.

This analysis of code based on reachability is called *control flow analysis*, and TypeScript uses this flow analysis to narrow types as it encounters type guards and assignments. When a variable is analyzed, control flow can split off and re-merge over and over again, and that variable can be observed to have a different type at each point.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
example(): string | number' >example</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">()

```

```
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number | boolean' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">
| </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> |
</span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number | boolean' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'
>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random(): number' >random</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() &lt;</span><span style="color: #098658">0.5</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: boolean' style='border-
bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'>
</div>let x: boolean</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random():
number' >random</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() &lt;</span><span style="color: #098658">0.5</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number | boolean' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let x: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'>
</div>let x: string</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number | boolean' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
```

```

</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let
x: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let x: number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: string | number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span
class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> let x: string |
number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAUwB4EMC2AHANsgCgEpEBvAl
KmCQxAA9AH5FKhhgRAJNHX0jEzNLG1sSchDUVUQAlm1kXA98v2CnMBd8d09vXyUAoNCQyKUAXxRc.
</div> </pre>

```

## Using type predicates

We've worked with existing JavaScript constructs to handle narrowing so far, however sometimes you want more direct control over how types change throughout your code.

To define a user-defined type guard, we simply need to define a function whose return type is a *type predicate*.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
isFish(pet: Fish | Bird): pet is Fish'>isFish</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pet: Fish | Bird'>pet</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}'>Fish</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Bird =
{&#13; fly: () => void;&#13;}'>Bird</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">):
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pet: Fish | Bird'>pet</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">is</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Fish =
{&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}'>Fish</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pet: Fish | Bird'>pet</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Fish =
{&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;}'>Fish</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">).</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) swim: () => void'

```

```
>swim</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> != </span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='var undefined' >undefined</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYglgZwBZQLxQN5QQdzgWwC4oAKASjC KABaEJUdYBCgjl0DlxMoRDckEkhgV0QUL34hMmJUHIRYDMwOKCgtYB0BUxTLKHVCpLIAOIwCKABCVHR </div></pre>
```

`pet is Fish` is our type predicate in this example. A predicate takes the form `parameterName is Type`, where `parameterName` must be the name of a parameter from the current function signature.

Any time `isFish` is called with some variable, TypeScript will *narrow* that variable to that specific type if the original type is compatible.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Both calls to &apos;swim&apos; and &apos;fly&apos; are now okay.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let pet: Fish | Bird' >pet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getSmallPet(): Fish | Bird' >getSmallPet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function isFish(pet: Fish | Bird): pet is Fish' >isFish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let pet: Fish | Bird' >pet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let pet: Fish' >pet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) swim: () => void' >swim</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let pet: Bird' >pet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) fly: () => void' >fly</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYglgZwBZQLxQN5QQdzgWwC4oAKASjC EJkxBHBCLDrmBxQUFrAOgKm4ZZQ6imhZAB0uARQAISo6PrKonB6EL4cLBwA9J1QALT9KjrA-b1dPbx0wCgqdulpwHRQAOSV+EtFesxLEiDrmtB6dDhQdADW6iBIHOKFSegW1rb2TsDknBxwoqQh0QXA </div></pre>
```

Notice that TypeScript not only knows that `pet` is a `Fish` in the `if` branch; it also knows that in the `else` branch, you *don't* have a `Fish`, so you must have a `Bird`.

You may use the type guard `isFish` to filter an array of `Fish | Bird` and obtain an array of `Fish`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const zoo:
(Fish | Bird)[]' >zoo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: ( </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13; name:
string;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Bird = {&#13; fly: () => void;&#13; name:
string;&#13;}' >Bird</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>[] = [ </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getSmallPet(): Fish | Bird' >getSmallPet</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(), </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='function getSmallPet(): Fish | Bird' >getSmallPet</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(), </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getSmallPet(): Fish |
Bird' >getSmallPet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()];</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const underWater1: Fish[]' >underWater1</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13; name: string;&#13;}' >Fish</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='const zoo: (Fish | Bird)[]' >zoo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span>
<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&#13;Fish |
Bird.</span>filter&#13;Fish>(predicate: (value: Fish | Bird, index: number, array: (Fish | Bird)[]) => value
is Fish, thisArg?: any): Fish[] (+1 overload)' >filter</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='function isFish(pet: Fish | Bird):
pet is Fish' >isFish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// or, equivalently</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const underWater2: Fish[]' >underWater2</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13; name: string;&#13;}' >Fish</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='const zoo: (Fish | Bird)[]' >zoo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span>
<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&#13;Fish |
Bird.</span>filter&#13;Fish>(predicate: (value: Fish | Bird, index: number, array: (Fish | Bird)[]) => value
is Fish, thisArg?: any): Fish[] (+1 overload)' >filter</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='function isFish(pet: Fish | Bird):
pet is Fish' >isFish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13; name:
string;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[];</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// The predicate may need repeating for more
```



```

complex examples</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
underWater3: Fish[]' >underWater3</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish = {&#13; swim: () => void;&#13;
name: string;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] = </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const zoo: (Fish | Bird)[]' >zoo</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&#13;Fish | Bird>.filter&#13;Fish>(predicate: (value: Fish | Bird, index: number, array:
(Fish | Bird)[]) => value is Fish, thisArg?: any): Fish[] (+1 overload)' >filter</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">((</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) pet: Fish | Bird' >pet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">):
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pet: Fish | Bird' >pet</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">is</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Fish =
{&#13; swim: () => void;&#13; name: string;&#13;}' >Fish</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pet: Fish | Bird' >pet</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"sharky"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">>false</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function isFish(pet: Fish | Bird): pet is Fish' >isFish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pet:
Fish | Bird' >pet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">});</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYglgZwBZQLxQN5QQdzgWwC4oAKASjC
fC5SLZsHajCD8ADqHGAEIAjPIkJcVPs6N1xhpYfwSJkCmQpHMoHR+K8IABHZxwGjBCBsYBaTbbYBQcFQn
</div></pre>

```

In addition, classes can [use this is Type](#) to narrow their type.

## Discriminated unions

Most of the examples we've looked at so far have focused around narrowing single variables with simple types like `string`, `boolean`, and `number`. While this is common, most of the time in JavaScript we'll be dealing with slightly more complex structures.

For some motivation, let's imagine we're trying to encode shapes like circles and squares. Circles keep track of their radii and squares keep track of their side lengths. We'll use a field called `kind` to tell which shape we're dealing with. Here's a first attempt at defining `Shape`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Shape'>Shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.kind: &quot;circle&quot; | &quot;square&quot;'>>kind</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #A31515">"circle"</span><span style="color: #000000"> |</span><span style="color: #A31515">"square"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.radius?: number | undefined'>radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.sideLength?: number | undefined'>sideLength</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8BQyyA1qACYB'></div></pre>
```

Notice we're using a union of string literal types: `"circle"` and `"square"` to tell us whether we should treat the shape as a circle or square respectively. By using `"circle" | "square"` instead of `string`, we can avoid misspelling issues.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function handleShape(shape: Shape): void'>handleShape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Shape'>Shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// oops!</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.kind: &quot;circle&quot; | &quot;square&quot;'>>kind</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ===</span><span style="color: #A31515">"rect"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error"><span>This
```

condition will always return 'false' since the types '"circle" | "square"' and '"rect"' have no overlap.

```
</span> <span class="code">2367</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">This condition
will always return 'false' since the types '"circle" | "square"' and '"rect"' have no overlap.</span>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">// ...
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYBsB2AUAJYB2ALjAGYC
</div> </pre>
```

We can write a `getArea` function that applies the right logic based on if it's dealing with a circle or square. We'll first try dealing with circles.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
getArea(shape: Shape): number' >getArea</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='interface Shape' >Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.<data-
lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number' >PI</data-lsp> * </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.radius?:
number | undefined' >radius</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ** </span>
<span style="color: #098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>Object is possibly 'undefined'.</span> <span class="code">2532</span>
</span> <span class="error-behind">Object is possibly 'undefined'.</span> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMAbQBLAOwBcYAzAC
WhaAUA'>Try</a> </div> </pre> <!-- TODO -->
```

Under `strictNullChecks` that gives us an error - which is appropriate since `radius` might not be defined. But what if we perform the appropriate checks on the `kind` property?

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
getArea(shape: Shape): number | undefined' >getArea</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'
>shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Shape' >Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
```

```

style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Shape.kind: &quot;circle&quot; | &quot;square&quot;' >kind</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"circle"
</span><span style="color: #000000"> ) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.<data-lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number'
>PI</data-lsp> * </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape:
Shape' >shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.radius?: number | undefined' >radius</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> ** </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Object is possibly
'undefined'.</span><span class="code">2532</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Object is possibly 'undefined'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMAbQBLAOwBcYAzAC
</div></pre>

```

Hmm, TypeScript still doesn't know what to do here. We've hit a point where we know more about our values than the type checker does. We could try to use a non-null assertion (a `!` after `shape.radius`) to say that `radius` is definitely present.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
getArea(shape: Shape): number | undefined' >getArea</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'
>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Shape' >Shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> ) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Shape.kind: &quot;circle&quot; | &quot;square&quot;' >kind</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"circle"
</span><span style="color: #000000"> ) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.<data-lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number'
>PI</data-lsp> * </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape:

```

```
Shape' >shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Shape.radius?: number | undefined' >radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">! ** </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">> </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8BQyyA1qACYBDF4gEYYAB7EGQDCDAAQUE4AApOTBwqDGwIAEpKAIjgGGQ4hlgAOIIMmQAXgqaOgZmanTMojFw3ig'></div></pre>
```

But this doesn't feel ideal. We had to shout a bit at the type-checker with those non-null assertions (!) to convince it that `shape.radius` was defined, but those assertions are error-prone if we start to move code around. Additionally, outside of `strictNullChecks` we're able to accidentally access any of those fields anyway (since optional properties are just assumed to always be present when reading them). We can definitely do better.

The problem with this encoding of `Shape` is that the type-checker doesn't have any way to know whether or not `radius` or `sideLength` are present based on the `kind` property. We need to communicate what we know to the type checker. With that in mind, let's take another swing at defining `Shape`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Circle' >Circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.kind: &quot;circle&quot;' >kind</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #A31515">"circle"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number' >radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Square' >Square</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Square.kind: &quot;square&quot;' >kind</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #A31515">"square"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Square.sideLength: number' >sideLength</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span>
```

```

style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square' >Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Circle'
>Circle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Square' >Square</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMLCggNig3gKGWQGtQATAL
</div></pre>

```

Here, we've properly separated `Shape` out into two types with different values for the `kind` property, but `radius` and `sideLength` are declared as required properties in their respective types.

Let's see what happens here when we try to access the `radius` of a `Shape`.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
getArea(shape: Shape): number' >getArea</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square' >Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.<data-
lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number' >PI</data-lsp> * </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='any' >radius</data-
lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ** </span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <span class="error">
<span>Property 'radius' does not exist on type 'Shape'. Property 'radius' does not exist on type
'Square'.</span> <span class="code">2339</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Property
'radius' does not exist on type 'Shape'. Property 'radius' does not exist on type 'Square'.</span>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code> <a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQBLAOwBcYAzAC
toukA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Like with our first definition of `Shape`, this is still an error. When `radius` was optional, we got an error (only in `strictNullChecks`) because TypeScript couldn't tell whether the property was present. Now that `Shape` is a union, TypeScript is telling us that `shape` might be a `Square`, and `Square`s don't have `radius` defined on them! Both interpretations are correct, but only does our new encoding of `Shape` still cause an error outside of `strictNullChecks`.

But what if we tried checking the `kind` property again?

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getArea(shape: Shape): number | undefined'>getArea</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square'>Shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) kind: &quot;circle&quot; | &quot;square&quot;'>kind</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #A31515">"circle"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.<data-lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number'>PI</data-lsp> * </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Circle' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number'>radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ** </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>(parameter) shape: Circle</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMLCggNig3gKGWQGtQATALCH72Tl4d3YAmIxmEmdu7mYA9AH5WSXEgA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

That got rid of the error! When every type in a union contains a common property with literal types, TypeScript considers that to be a *discriminated union*, and can narrow out the members of the union.

In this case, `kind` was that common property (which is what's considered a *discriminant* property of `Shape`). Checking whether the `kind` property was `"circle"` got rid of every type in `Shape` that didn't have a `kind` property with the type `"circle"`. That narrowed `shape` down to the type `Circle`.

The same checking works with `switch` statements as well. Now we can try to write our complete `getArea` without any pesky `!` non-null assertions.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
getArea(shape: Shape): number' >getArea</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square' >Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">switch</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) kind:
&quot;circle&quot; | &quot;square&quot;' >kind</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">case</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"circle"</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <data-
lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number' >PI</data-lsp> * </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Circle' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>shape</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number' >radius</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
** </span> <span style="color: #098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>
(parameter) shape: Circle</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">case</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"square"</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Square' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Square.sideLength: number' >sideLength</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ** </span> <span style="color: #098658">2</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (parameter) shape: Square</span> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMLCggNig3gKGWQGtQATAL
CGH2TI5Ts4AmlymE1bf3ogA9AH4V6dn5npoks-
kR1GANiULT5hiYzJYbPZ7sgnn9Xu8fqJOlgA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

The important thing here was the encoding of `Shape`. Communicating the right information to TypeScript - that `Circle` and `Square` were really two separate types with specific `kind` fields - was crucial. Doing that let us write type-safe TypeScript code that looks no different than the



JavaScript we would've written otherwise. From there, the type system was able to do the "right" thing and figure out the types in each branch of our `switch` statement.

As an aside, try playing around with the above example and remove some of the `return` keywords. You'll see that type-checking can help avoid bugs when accidentally falling through different clauses in a `switch` statement.

Discriminated unions are useful for more than just talking about circles and squares. They're good for representing any sort of messaging scheme in JavaScript, like when sending messages over the network (client/server communication), or encoding mutations in a state management framework.

## The `never` type

When narrowing, you can reduce the options of a union to a point where you have removed all possibilities and have nothing left. In those cases, TypeScript will use a `never` type to represent a state which shouldn't exist.

## Exhaustiveness checking

The `never` type is assignable to every type; however, no type is assignable to `never` (except `never` itself). This means you can use narrowing and rely on `never` turning up to do exhaustive checking in a `switch` statement.

For example, adding a `default` to our `getArea` function which tries to assign the shape to `never` will raise when every possible case has not been handled.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Shape
= Circle | Square'>Shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Circle'>Circle</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Square'
>Square</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function getArea(shape: Shape): number'>getArea</data-
lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape'>shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:<
/!span><span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square'
>Shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">){</span></div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">switch</span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter
```

```

shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) kind: &quot;circle&quot; |
&quot;square&quot;'>kind</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">case</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#A31515">"circle"</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'
>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.<data-lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI:
number'>PI</data-lsp> * </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
shape: Circle'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number'>radius</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> ** </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">case</span><span style="color: #000000"></span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"square"</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Square'>shape</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Square.sideLength: number'>sideLength</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> **
</span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">default</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
_exhaustiveCheck: never'>_exhaustiveCheck</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span><span style="color: #267F99">never</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: never'>shape</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const _exhaustiveCheck: never'
>_exhaustiveCheck</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMLCggNig3gKGWQGtQATAL
gDsXiCRjgCSyRTiM9JOIgA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Adding a new member to the `Shape` union, will cause a TypeScript error:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface

```

```

Triangle' > Triangle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Triangle.kind: &quot;triangle&quot;' >kind</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"triangle"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Triangle.sideLength: number'
>sideLength</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square | Triangle' >Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Circle'
>Circle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Square' >Square</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Triangle'
>Triangle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function getArea(shape: Shape): number' >getArea</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Shape = Circle | Square | Triangle'
>Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">switch</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) kind: &quot;circle&quot; |
&quot;square&quot; | &quot;triangle&quot;' >kind</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">case</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"circle"</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.<data-
lsp lsp='(property) Math.PI: number' >PI</data-lsp> * </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Circle' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius:
number' >radius</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ** </span> <span
style="color: #098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">case</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"square"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">:</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Square' >shape</data-lsp>

```

```
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp  
lsp='(property) Square.sideLength: number' >sideLength</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:  
#000000"> ** </span> <span style="color: #098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">;  
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:  
#AF00DB">default</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </div> <div class='line'>  
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span  
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='const  
_exhaustiveCheck: never' >_exhaustiveCheck</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color:  
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">never</span> <span style="color: #000000">  
= </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) shape: Triangle'  
>shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error">  
<span>Type 'Triangle' is not assignable to type 'never'.</span> <span class="code">2322</span>  
</span> <span class="error-behind">Type 'Triangle' is not assignable to type 'never'.</span> <div  
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:  
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:  
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const _exhaustiveCheck: never' >_exhaustiveCheck</data-lsp> </span>  
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }  
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a  
class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFAEsA7AFxgDMBDAY  
pBEAIJW5AAUjAN9qMZXkACURXUA7nhEIEGgF3cAdKWPxU4oEo5EQNCE4zEyCkQOkh3k0D2AFlyMEfg/  
</div> </pre>
```

# More on Functions

Functions are the basic building block of any application, whether they're local functions, imported from another module, or methods on a class. They're also values, and just like other values, TypeScript has many ways to describe how functions can be called. Let's learn about how to write types that describe functions.

## Function Type Expressions

The simplest way to describe a function is with a *function type expression*. These types are syntactically similar to arrow functions:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
greeter(fn: (a: string) => void): void' >greeter</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) fn: (a: string) => void'
>fn</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: (</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: string' >a</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:
</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">=></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) fn: (a: string) => void' >fn</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, World"</span><span style="color: #000000">);
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function printToConsole(s: string): void'
>printToConsole</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
greeter(fn: (a: string) => void): void' >greeter</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='function printToConsole(s: string): void'
```

```
>printToConsole</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAcwE4FN1XagFMMALkVwENiBn
</div></pre>
```

The syntax `(a: string) => void` means "a function with one parameter, named `a`, of type `string`, that doesn't have a return value". Just like with function declarations, if a parameter type isn't specified, it's implicitly `any`.

Note that the parameter name is **required**. The function type `(string) => void` means "a function with a parameter named `string` of type `any`".

Of course, we can use a type alias to name a function type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
GreetFunction = (a: string) => void' >GreetFunction</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: string'
>a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">) </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">=></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greeter(fn: GreetFunction): void' >greeter</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) fn: GreetFunction' >fn</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type GreetFunction = (a: string) => void'
>GreetFunction</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBA4gThCwBiBXAdgY2ASwPbpQC8UAFIYE
</div></pre>
```

## Call Signatures

In JavaScript, functions can have properties in addition to being callable. However, the function type expression syntax doesn't allow for declaring properties. If we want to describe something callable with properties, we can write a *call signature* in an object type:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
DescribableFunction = {&#13; (someArg: number): boolean;&#13; description:
string;&#13;}' >DescribableFunction</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) description: string' >description</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) someArg: number'
>someArg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function doSomething(fn: DescribableFunction): void'
>doSomething</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) fn: DescribableFunction' >fn</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
DescribableFunction = {&#13; (someArg: number): boolean;&#13; description:
string;&#13;}' >DescribableFunction</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) fn: DescribableFunction' >fn</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
description: string' >description</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">" returned "</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) fn: (someArg: number) => boolean'
>fn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#098658">6</span> <span style="color: #000000">));</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAIhDOBJATgSwEYEN0BsIDEBXAO0WFQht
</div> </pre>

```

Note that the syntax is slightly different compared to a function type expression - use `:` between the parameter list and the return type rather than `=>`.

## Construct Signatures

JavaScript functions can also be invoked with the `new` operator. TypeScript refers to these as *constructors* because they usually create a new object. You can write a *construct signature* by adding the `new` keyword in front of a call signature:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
SomeConstructor = new (s: string) => SomeObject' >SomeConstructor</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type SomeObject
= any' >SomeObject</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">};</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(ctor: SomeConstructor): any' >fn</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) ctor:
SomeConstructor' >ctor</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type SomeConstructor = new (s: string) => any'
>SomeConstructor</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) ctor: new (s: string) => any' >ctor</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAyg9gWwgeQEYCsIGNhQLxQCGAdiANw
</div></pre>
```

Some objects, like JavaScript's `Date` object, can be called with or without `new`. You can combine call and construct signatures in the same type arbitrarily:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
CallOrConstruct' >CallOrConstruct</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">):</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Date' >Date</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
```



```
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number | undefined'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMJwDYYPJVQexAGcwoBxBM</div></pre>
```

## Generic Functions

It's common to write a function where the types of the input relate to the type of the output, or where the types of two inputs are related in some way. Let's consider for a moment a function that returns the first element of an array:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function firstElement(arr: any[]): any'>firstElement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]'>arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000"> [ ] {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]'>arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMGAnAzIAogGwKYC2eYUAFAlaq</div></pre>
```

This function does its job, but unfortunately has the return type `any`. It'd be better if the function returned the type of the array element.

In TypeScript, *generics* are used when we want to describe a correspondence between two values. We do this by declaring a *type parameter* in the function signature:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function firstElement<Type>(arr: Type[]): Type'>firstElement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement<Type>(arr: Type[]): Type'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]'>arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">
```

```

<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement&lt;Type>(arr: Type[]): Type'
>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[]): </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement&lt;Type>(arr: Type[]): Type'
>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr:
Type[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMGAnAzIAogGwKYC2eYUAPACo
</div></pre>

```

By adding a type parameter `Type` to this function and using it in two places, we've created a link between the input of the function (the array) and the output (the return value). Now when we call it, a more specific type comes out:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// s is of type
'<span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const s:
string' >s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function firstElement&lt;string>(arr: string[]): string'
>firstElement</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"a"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"b"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"c"</span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">// n is of type 'number'</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const n: number' >n</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
firstElement&lt;number>(arr: number[]): number' >firstElement</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">,
</span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtVKxgGcMBRCEAM
</div></pre>

```

## Inference

Note that we didn't have to specify `Type` in this sample. The type was *inferred* - chosen automatically - by TypeScript.

We can use multiple type parameters as well. For example, a standalone version of `map` would look like this:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >map</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Input in map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >Input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Output in map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >Output</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Input[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Input in map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >Input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[],</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) func: (arg: Input) => Output' >func</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Input' >arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Input in map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >Input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Output in map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >Output</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Output in map&lt;lt;Input, Output>(arr: Input[], func: (arg: Input) => Output): Output[]' >Output</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[]</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Input[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;lt;Input>.map&lt;lt;Output>(callbackfn: (value: Input, index: number, array: Input[]) => Output, thisArg?: any): Output[]' >map</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) func: (arg: Input) => Output' >func</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Parameter &apos;n&apos; is of type &apos;string&apos;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// &apos;parsed&apos; is of type &apos;number[]&apos;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const parsed: number[]' >parsed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">=</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function map&lt;lt;string, number>(arr: string[], func: (arg: string) => number): number[]' >map</data-lsp></span><span>
```

```

style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color: #A31515">"1"</span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #A31515">"2"</span><span style="color: #000000">,
</span><span style="color: #A31515">"3"</span><span style="color: #000000">], (</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: string' >n</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">) </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=></span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
parseInt(string: string, radix?: number | undefined): number' >parseInt</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n:
string' >n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">));</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAcCcFMBdYJbUgWgQcwHYHsYCgAzAV0wGNFtN
</div></pre>

```

Note that in this example, TypeScript could infer both the type of the `Input` type parameter (from the given `string` array), as well as the `Output` type parameter based on the return value of the function expression ( `number` ).

## Constraints

We've written some generic functions that can work on *any* kind of value. Sometimes we want to relate two values, but can only operate on a certain subset of values. In this case, we can use a *constraint* to limit the kinds of types that a type parameter can accept.

Let's write a function that returns the longer of two values. To do this, we need a `length` property that's a number. We *constrain* the type parameter to that type by writing an `extends` clause:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
longest&lt;Type extends {&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(a: Type, b: Type): Type'
>longest</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in longest&lt;Type extends {&#13;
length: number;&#13;}>(a: Type, b: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color:
#000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) length: number'
>length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> }&gt;</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: Type extends { length: number; }' >a</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in longest&lt;Type extends {&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(a: Type,
b: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) b: Type extends { length: number; }' >b</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp

```

```

lsp='(type parameter) Type in longest&lt;Type extends {&#13; length:
number;&#13;}>(a: Type, b: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: Type extends { length: number; }' >a</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
length: number' >length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &gt;=</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) b: Type extends { length: number; }' >b</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) length: number' >length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: Type extends { length: number; }' >a</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) b: Type extends { length: number; }' >b</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// longerArray is of type &apos;number[]&apos;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const longerArray: number[]'
>longerArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function longest&lt;number[]>(a: number[], b: number[]): number[]'
>longest</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">], [</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">// longerString is of type &apos;string&apos;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const longerString: &quot;alice&quot; |
&quot;bob&quot;' >longerString</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
longest&lt;&quot;alice&quot; | &quot;bob&quot;'>(a:
&quot;alice&quot; | &quot;bob&quot;, b: &quot;alice&quot; |
&quot;bob&quot;): &quot;alice&quot; | &quot;bob&quot;'
>longest</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"alice"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"bob"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">// Error! Numbers don&apos;t have a &apos;length&apos;

```

```

property</span></div><div class='line'><span style='color: #0000FF'>const</span><span
style='color: #000000'></span><span style='color: #0070C1'><data-lsp lsp='const notOK:
{&#13; length: number;&#13;}'>notOK</data-lsp></span><span style='color:
#000000'>=</span><span style='color: #795E26'><data-lsp lsp='function longest&#13;
{&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(a: {&#13; length: number;&#13;}, b:
{&#13; length: number;&#13;}): {&#13; length: number;&#13;}'
>longest</data-lsp></span><span style='color: #000000'></span><span style='color:
#098658'><data-err>10</data-err></span><span style='color: #000000'>,</span><span
style='color: #098658'>100</span><span style='color: #000000'>);</span></div><span
class='error'><span>Argument of type 'number' is not assignable to parameter of type '{ length:
number; }'.</span><span class='code'>2345</span></span><span class='error-
behind'>Argument of type 'number' is not assignable to parameter of type '{ length: number; }'.
</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWdG00AoAMwFcA7
imai6oEE8GE0A6o3G5locBoAHkANKAn4g9YABIsEvFxyAA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

There are few interesting things to note in this example. We allowed TypeScript to *infer* the return type of `longest`. Return type inference also works on generic functions.

Because we constrained `Type` to `{ length: number }`, we were allowed to access the `.length` property of the `a` and `b` parameters. Without the type constraint, we wouldn't be able to access those properties because the values might have been some other type without a `length` property.

The types of `longerArray` and `longerString` were inferred based on the arguments. Remember, generics are all about relating two or more values with the same type!

Finally, just as we'd like, the call to `longest(10, 100)` is rejected because the `number` type doesn't have a `.length` property.

## Working with Constrained Values

Here's a common error when working with generic constraints:

```

<pre class='shiki light-plus twoslash lsp' style='background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000'><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style='color: #0000FF'>function</span>
<span style='color: #000000'></span><span style='color: #795E26'><data-lsp lsp='function
minimumLength&#13;Type extends {&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(obj: Type,
minimum: number): Type'>minimumLength</data-lsp></span><span style='color:
#000000'>&lt;</span><span style='color: #267F99'><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
minimumLength&#13;Type extends {&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(obj: Type,
minimum: number): Type'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style='color: #000000'></span>
<span style='color: #0000FF'>extends</span><span style='color: #000000'> {</span><span
style='color: #001080'><data-lsp lsp='(property) length: number'>length</data-lsp></span>
<span style='color: #000000'>:</span><span style='color: #267F99'>number</span><span

```

```

style="color: #000000"> }&gt;(</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type extends { length:
number; }' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in minimumLength&lt;Type extends
{&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(obj: Type, minimum: number): Type' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) minimum:
number' >minimum</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> number</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">):
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
minimumLength&lt;Type extends {&#13; length: number;&#13;}>(obj: Type,
minimum: number): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB"> if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ( </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type extends { length: number; }' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) length:
number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;= </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) minimum: number' >minimum</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> return</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type extends {
length: number; }' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB"> else</span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
length: number' >length</data-lsp>: </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) minimum: number' >minimum</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> }; </span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Type '{
length: number; }' is not assignable to type 'Type'. '{ length: number; }' is assignable to the
constraint of type 'Type', but 'Type' could be instantiated with a different subtype of constraint '{
length: number; }'.</span> <span class="code">2322</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Type '{ length: number; }' is not assignable to type 'Type'. '{ length: number; }' is assignable
to the constraint of type 'Type', but 'Type' could be instantiated with a different subtype of
constraint '{ length: number; }'.</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFADMBXAOWGMAX/
</div> </pre>

```

It might look like this function is OK - `Type` is constrained to `{ length: number }`, and the function either returns `Type` or a value matching that constraint. The problem is that the function

promises to return the *same* kind of object as was passed in, not just *some* object matching the constraint. If this code were legal, you could write code that definitely wouldn't work:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">//</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const arr: number[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function<br>minimumLength<span>&lt;number[]>(obj: number[], minimum: number): number[]</span><br>>minimumLength</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #098658">6</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span><span style="color: #098658">,</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">//</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">//</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console:<br>Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const arr: number[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array<span>&lt;number>.slice(start?: number |<br>undefined, end?: number | undefined): number[]' >slice</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></span></div></code><a class='playground-link'<br>href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwFstUsDkCAZEV</div></pre>
```

## Specifying Type Arguments

TypeScript can usually infer the intended type arguments in a generic call, but not always. For example, let's say you wrote a function to combine two arrays:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function<br>combine<span>&lt;Type>(arr1: Type[], arr2: Type[]): Type[]' >combine</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type<br>parameter) Type in combine<span>&lt;Type>(arr1: Type[], arr2: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr1: Type[]' >arr1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in combine<span>&lt;Type></span></div></code></div></pre>
```



```
(arr1: Type[], arr2: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> [],
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr2: Type[]' >arr2</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in combine&lt;Type>(arr1: Type[], arr2: Type[]): Type[]'
>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[]): </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in combine&lt;Type>(arr1: Type[], arr2:
Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr1: Type[]' >arr1</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&lt;Type>.concat(...items: ConcatArray&lt;Type>[]): Type[] (+1 overload)'
>concat</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr2: Type[]' >arr2</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABBObbARjMBTAPAFQE8AHbAPgA
</div></pre>
```

Normally it would be an error to call this function with mismatched arrays:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const arr:
number[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function combine&lt;number>(arr1: number[], arr2: number[]):
number[]' >combine</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">), </span><span style="color: #A31515">
<data-err>&quot;hello&quot;</data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span>
</div><span class="error"><span>Type 'string' is not assignable to type 'number'.</span><span
class="code">2322</span></span><span class="error-behind">Type 'string' is not assignable to
type 'number'.</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFABNIBjAGwENpJQA
</div></pre>
```

If you intended to do this, however, you could manually specify `Type` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const arr:
(string | number)[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function combine&lt;string | number>(arr1: (string |
```

```
number)[], arr2: (string | number[]): (string | number)[]' >combine</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;(</span> <span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color: #098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">], </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span> <span style="color: #000000">]);</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXzBwFsAjLVEAHgl'></div> </pre>
```

## Guidelines for Writing Good Generic Functions

Writing generic functions is fun, and it can be easy to get carried away with type parameters. Having too many type parameters or using constraints where they aren't needed can make inference less successful, frustrating callers of your function.

### Push Type Parameters Down

Here are two ways of writing a function that appear similar:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function firstElement1&amp;lt;Type>(arr: Type[]): Type' >firstElement1</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement1&amp;lt;Type>(arr: Type[]): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement1&amp;lt;Type>(arr: Type[]): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> <[]> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> <0</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function firstElement2&amp;lt;Type extends any[]>(arr: Type): any' >firstElement2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement2&amp;lt;Type extends any[]>(arr: Type): any' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>

```

```
#000000">[]&gt;(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type
extends any[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in firstElement2&lt;Type
extends any[]>(arr: Type): any' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type extends any[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color:
#000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">>// a: number (good)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
firstElement1&lt;number>(arr: number[]): number' >firstElement1</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">,
</span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">>// b: any (bad)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const b: any' >b</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
firstElement2&lt;number[]>(arr: number[]): any' >firstElement2</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">,
</span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMGANAzIAogGwKYC2eYUAjADw
</div></pre>
```

These might seem identical at first glance, but `firstElement1` is a much better way to write this function. Its inferred return type is `Type`, but `firstElement2`'s inferred return type is `any` because TypeScript has to resolve the `arr[0]` expression using the constraint type, rather than "waiting" to resolve the element during a call.

**Rule:** When possible, use the type parameter itself rather than constraining it

## Use Fewer Type Parameters

Here's another pair of similar functions:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
filter1&lt;Type>(arr: Type[], func: (arg: Type) => boolean): Type[]' >filter1 </data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in filter1&lt;Type>(arr: Type[], func: (arg: Type) => boolean): Type[]'
>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
filter1&lt;Type>(arr: Type[], func: (arg: Type) => boolean): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> [], </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) func: (arg: Type) => boolean' >func</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type'
>arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in filter1&lt;Type>(arr: Type[], func: (arg: Type) =>
boolean): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in filter1&lt;Type>(arr: Type[],
func: (arg: Type) => boolean): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> []
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&lt;Type>.filter(predicate: (value: Type, index: number, array: Type[]) => unknown,
thisArg?: any): Type[] (+1 overload)' >filter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) func: (arg: Type) => boolean'
>func</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function filter2&lt;Type, Func extends (arg: Type) => boolean>(arr:
Type[], func: Func): Type[]' >filter2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in filter2&lt;Type, Func
extends (arg: Type) => boolean>(arr: Type[], func: Func): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter)
Func in filter2&lt;Type, Func extends (arg: Type) => boolean>(arr: Type[], func: Func): Type[]'
>Func</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
filter2&lt;Type, Func extends (arg: Type) => boolean>(arr: Type[], func: Func): Type[]'
>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp

```

```

lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]' > arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in filter2&lt;Type, Func
extends (arg: Type) => boolean>(arr: Type[], func: Func): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">[],</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) func: Func extends (arg: Type)
=> boolean' >func</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Func in filter2&lt;Type, Func extends
(arg: Type) => boolean>(arr: Type[], func: Func): Type[]' >Func</data-lsp></span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in filter2&lt;Type, Func extends (arg: Type) => boolean>(arr:
Type[], func: Func): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: Type[]' >arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&lt;Type>.filter(predicate: (value: Type, index: number, array: Type[]) => unknown,
thisArg?: any): Type[] (+1 overload)' >filter</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) func: Func extends (arg: Type)
=> boolean' >func</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMGAbKBTATgRgDwAqAngA4YB8
Ox4nVyA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

We've created a type parameter `Func` that *doesn't relate two values*. That's always a red flag, because it means callers wanting to specify type arguments have to manually specify an extra type argument for no reason. `Func` doesn't do anything but make the function harder to read and reason about!

**Rule:** Always use as few type parameters as possible

## Type Parameters Should Appear Twice

Sometimes we forget that a function might not need to be generic:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
greet&lt;Str extends string>(s: Str): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Str in
greet&lt;Str extends string>(s: Str): void' >Str</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:

```

```
#000000">&gt;(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: Str extends
string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Str in greet&lt;Str extends string>(s: Str): void'
>Str</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, "</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) s: Str extends string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
greet&lt;&quot;world&quot;>(s: &quot;world&quot;): void' >greet</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"world"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAQwE4FN1QDwGUqqLoAeU6YA.
</div> </pre>
```

We could just as easily have written a simpler version:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
greet(s: string): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, "</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string'
>s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAQwE4FN1QBQGcBciuUqMYyAll.
</div> </pre>
```

Remember, type parameters are for *relating the types of multiple values*. If a type parameter is only used once in the function signature, it's not relating anything.

**Rule:** If a type parameter only appears in one location, strongly reconsider if you actually need it

# Optional Parameters

Functions in JavaScript often take a variable number of arguments. For example, the `toFixed` method of `number` takes an optional digit count:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(n: number): void'>f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">).</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Number.toFixed(fractionDigits?: number | undefined): string'>toFixed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span>);</span><span style="color: #008000">>// 0 arguments</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">).</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Number.toFixed(fractionDigits?: number | undefined): string'>toFixed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #008000">3</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>);</span><span style="color: #008000">>// 1 argument</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMAFGAXIsIC2AjAUwCcBKRAbwC'></div></pre>
```

We can model this in TypeScript by marking the parameter as *optional* with `?`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(x?: number | undefined): void'>f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number | undefined'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

```

class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(x?: number | undefined): void' >f</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">();</span><span style="color: #008000">// OK</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(x?: number | undefined): void'
>f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span><span style="color: #008000">//
OK</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMAFADwPwC5FhAWwCMBTAJw
</div></pre>

```

Although the parameter is specified as type `number`, the `x` parameter will actually have the type `number | undefined` because unspecified parameters in JavaScript get the value `undefined`.

You can also provide a parameter *default*.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
f(x?: number): void' >f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMAFAD0QXkQRgAwCUiA3gFCKI
</div></pre>

```

Now in the body of `f`, `x` will have type `number` because any `undefined` argument will be replaced with `10`. Note that when a parameter is optional, callers can always pass `undefined`, as this simply simulates a "missing" argument:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">declare</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(x?:
number | undefined): void' >f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number | undefined' >x</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">?:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// cut</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// All OK</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(x?: number | undefined): void' >f</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(x?: number | undefined): void' >f</data-lsp></span><span

```



```

style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #098658">10</span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function f(x?: number | undefined): void' >f</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='var undefined'
>undefined</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtVIAoAPAfGc55Vkf
</div> </pre>

```

## Optional Parameters in Callbacks

Once you've learned about optional parameters and function type expressions, it's very easy to make the following mistakes when writing functions that invoke callbacks:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
myForEach(arr: any[], callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void): void'
>myForEach</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) callback: (arg: any, index?:
number | undefined) => void' >callback</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: any' >arg</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">,</span> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) index: number | undefined' >index</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">?:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000">{</span>
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">for</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let i: number' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let i: number' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]'
>arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Array&lt;any>.length: number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let i: number'
>i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">++) {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void' >callback</data-lsp>

```

```

</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">[</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let i: number' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">], </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let i: number'
>i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAWwJ4DE4CcCiBDCACwAo8ssA
</div> </pre>

```

What people usually intend when writing `index?` as an optional parameter is that they want both of these calls to be legal:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function myForEach(arr: any[], callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void): void'
>myForEach</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">([</span> <span style="color:
#098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">], (</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">));</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-
lsp lsp='function myForEach(arr: any[], callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void):
void' >myForEach</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">([</span> <span
style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">], (</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) i: number | undefined'
>i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) i: number | undefined'
>i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">));</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'

```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMAbQATSAYwBsBDaSI  
</div></pre>

What this *actually* means is that *callback might get invoked with one argument*. In other words, the function definition says that the implementation might look like this:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function myForEach(arr: any[], callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void): void'>myForEach</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]'>arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void'>callback</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: any'>arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) index: number | undefined'>index</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000">{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">for</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let i: number'>i</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let i: number'>i</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]'>arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Array&lt;any>.length: number'>length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let i: number'>i</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">++)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>// I don't feel like providing the index today</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) callback: (arg: any, index?: number | undefined) => void'>callback</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]'>arr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let i: number'>i</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
```

```
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMAbQAzAVwDsBjAFw
</div></pre>
```

In turn, TypeScript will enforce this meaning and issue errors that aren't really possible:

```
<!-- prettier-ignore --> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color:
#FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function myForEach(arr: any[], callback: (arg: any, index?:
number | undefined) => void): void' >myForEach</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">([</span> <span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">,
</span> <span style="color: #098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">], (</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) i: number |
undefined' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err>
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) i: number | undefined' >i</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Number.toFixed(fractionDigits?: number | undefined): string' >toFixed</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Object is possibly
'undefined'.</span> <span class="code">2532</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Object is possibly 'undefined'.</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMAbQATSAYwBsBDaSI
</div></pre>
```

In JavaScript, if you call a function with more arguments than there are parameters, the extra arguments are simply ignored. TypeScript behaves the same way. Functions with fewer parameters (of the same types) can always take the place of functions with more parameters.

When writing a function type for a callback, *never* write an optional parameter unless you intend to *call* the function without passing that argument

## Function Overloads

Some JavaScript functions can be called in a variety of argument counts and types. For example, you might write a function to produce a `Date` that takes either a timestamp (one argument) or a month/day/year specification (three arguments).

In TypeScript, we can specify a function that can be called in different ways by writing *overload signatures*. To do this, write some number of function signatures (usually two or more), followed by the body of the function:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
makeDate(timestamp: number): Date (+1 overload)' >makeDate</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
timestamp: number' >timestamp</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Date' >Date</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function makeDate(m: number, d: number, y: number): Date (+1
overload)' >makeDate</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: number' >m</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) d:
number' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Date' >Date</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function makeDate(timestamp: number): Date (+1 overload)'
>makeDate</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) mOrTimestamp: number' >mOrTimestamp</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) d: number | undefined' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?:
</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: number | undefined' >y</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Date' >Date</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) d: number | undefined' >d</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> !== </span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='var
undefined' >undefined</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &&</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: number | undefined' >y</data-lsp></span>

```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> != </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='var
undefined' >undefined</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Date: DateConstructor&#13;new (year: number, month: number, date?:
number | undefined, hours?: number | undefined, minutes?: number | undefined, seconds?: number
| undefined, ms?: number | undefined) => Date (+4 overloads)' >Date</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y:
number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) mOrTimestamp: number' >mOrTimestamp</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) d: number' >d</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">else</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Date:
DateConstructor&#13;new (value: string | number | Date) => Date (+4 overloads)'
>Date</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) mOrTimestamp: number' >mOrTimestamp</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const d1: Date' >d1</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
makeDate(timestamp: number): Date (+1 overload)' >makeDate</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #098658"> 12345678</span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const d2: Date' >d2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function makeDate(m: number, d: number, y:
number): Date (+1 overload)' >makeDate</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #098658"> 5</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #098658"> 5</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#098658"> 5</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const d3: Date' >d3</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
= </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function makeDate(timestamp: number):
Date (+1 overload)' >makeDate</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #098658"> 1</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #098658"> 3</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>No overload expects 2 arguments, but overloads do exist that expect either 1

```

or 3 arguments.

```
<span class="code">2575</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">No overload expects 2 arguments, but overloads do exist that expect either 1 or 3 arguments.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDsGBQAzAVwDsBjAFwfdxaGYYYzY0AYBFILGg9EAq7fYygp5AA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

In this example, we wrote two overloads: one accepting one argument, and another accepting three arguments. These first two signatures are called the *overload signatures*.

Then, we wrote a function implementation with a compatible signature. Functions have an *implementation* signature, but this signature can't be called directly. Even though we wrote a function with two optional parameters after the required one, it can't be called with two parameters!

## Overload Signatures and the Implementation Signature

This is a common source of confusion. Often people will write code like this and not understand why there is an error:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: string): void' >fn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: string): void' >fn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">>// ...</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">>// Expected to be able to call with zero arguments</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: string): void' >fn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Expected 1 arguments, but got 0.</span> <span class="code">2554</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Expected 1 arguments, but got 0.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYMBYBQAzAVwDsBjAFw'></div> </pre>
```

Again, the signature used to write the function body can't be "seen" from the outside.

The signature of the *implementation* is not visible from the outside. When writing an overloaded function, you should always have *two* or more signatures above the implementation of the function.

The implementation signature must also be *compatible* with the overload signatures. For example, these functions have errors because the implementation signature doesn't match the overloads in a correct way:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
fn(x: boolean): void (+1 overload)' >fn</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: boolean' >x</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span>
<span style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">//
Argument type isn't right</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: string): void (+1 overload)' >fn</data-lsp>
</data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">):</span>
<span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span
class="error"><span>This overload signature is not compatible with its implementation signature.
</span><span class="code">2394</span></span><span class="error-behind">This overload
signature is not compatible with its implementation signature.</span><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: boolean): void (+1 overload)' >fn</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: boolean' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYCcAWAUAGYCuAdgMY.
</div></pre><pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color:
#000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: string): string (+1 overload)' >fn</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">):</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Return type isn't right</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
```



```

</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: number): boolean
(+1 overload)' >fn</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>This overload signature is
not compatible with its implementation signature.</span> <span class="code">2394</span>
</span> <span class="error-behind">This overload signature is not compatible with its
implementation signature.</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: string): string (+1 overload)' >fn</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: string | number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"oops"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGYCcAWAUAGYCuAdgMY.
</div> </pre>

```

## Writing Good Overloads

Like generics, there are a few guidelines you should follow when using function overloads. Following these principles will make your function easier to call, easier to understand, and easier to implement.

Let's consider a function that returns the length of a string or an array:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
len(s: string): number (+1 overload)' >len</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function len(arr: any[]): number (+1 overload)' >len</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) arr: any[]' >arr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color: #000000">[</span>]: </span> <span

```

```

style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function len(s: string): number (+1
overload)'>len</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: any'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000">)<
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: any'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='any'>length</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAGwKZgBQGcBcitQBOMYA5gJR!
</div></pre>

```

This function is fine; we can invoke it with strings or arrays. However, we can't invoke it with a value that might be a string *or* an array, because TypeScript can only resolve a function call to a single overload:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='function len(s: string): number (+1 overload)'>len</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">""</span><span style="color: #000000">);<
</span><span style="color: #008000">// OK</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function len(arr: any[]): number (+1 overload)'>len</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">([</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span
style="color: #000000">]);</span><span style="color: #008000">// OK</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function len(s: string): number (+1
overload)'>len</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.random():
number'>random</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span><span
style="color: #098658">>0.5</span><span style="color: #000000">?</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">]);</span></div><span class="error">
<span>No overload matches this call. Overload 1 of 2, '(s: string): number', gave the following
error. Argument of type 'number[] | "hello"' is not assignable to parameter of type 'string'. Type
'number[]' is not assignable to type 'string'. Overload 2 of 2, '(arr: any[]): number', gave the
following error. Argument of type 'number[] | "hello"' is not assignable to parameter of type 'any[]'.
Type 'string' is not assignable to type 'any[]'</span><span class="code">2769</span></span>
<span class="error-behind">No overload matches this call. Overload 1 of 2, '(s: string): number',
gave the following error. Argument of type 'number[] | "hello"' is not assignable to parameter of
type 'string'. Type 'number[]' is not assignable to type 'string'. Overload 2 of 2, '(arr: any[]):
number', gave the following error. Argument of type 'number[] | "hello"' is not assignable to

```

```
parameter of type 'any[]'. Type 'string' is not assignable to type 'any[]'.
```

Because both overloads have the same argument count and same return type, we can instead write a non-overloaded version of the function:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function len(x: any[] | string): number' >len</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | any[]' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color: #000000">[] </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | any[]' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) length: number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAGwKZgBQA8BciCGYAngNoC6i/'> </div> </pre>
```

This is much better! Callers can invoke this with either sort of value, and as an added bonus, we don't have to figure out a correct implementation signature.

Always prefer parameters with union types instead of overloads when possible

## Declaring `this` in a Function

TypeScript will infer what the `this` should be in a function via code flow analysis, for example in the following:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const user: {&#13; id: number;&#13; admin: boolean;&#13; becomeAdmin: () => void;&#13;}' >user</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) id: number' >id</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 123</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
```

```

lsp='(property) admin: boolean' > admin</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">false</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) becomeAdmin: () => void' >becomeAdmin</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #001080">:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">() {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) admin:
boolean' >admin</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #0000FF">true</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> },</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">};</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLgBArhApgJxgXhgbwFAxgSwBMAuGARgCY
</div></pre>

```

TypeScript understands that the function `user.becomeAdmin` has a corresponding `this` which is the outer object `user`. `this`, *heh*, can be enough for a lot of cases, but there are a lot of cases where you need more control over what object `this` represents. The JavaScript specification states that you cannot have a parameter called `this`, and so TypeScript uses that syntax space to let you declare the type for `this` in the function body.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
DB' >DB</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
DB.filterUsers(filter: (this: User) => boolean): User[]' >filterUsers</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) filter:
(this: User) => boolean' >filter</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) this: User' >this</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
User' >User</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">=</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface User' >User</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">[]</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const db: DB' >db</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const
getDB: () => DB' >getDB</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const admins: User[]' >admins</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp

```

```

lsp='const db: DB' >db</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) DB.filterUsers(filter: (this: User) => boolean):
User[]' >filterUsers</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) this: User' >this</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface User'
>User</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) User.admin: boolean'
>admin</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">});</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgKoGdrIN4ChnLAAMAXMiAK4
</div> </pre>

```

This pattern is common with callback-style APIs, where another object typically controls when your function is called. Note that you need to use `function` and not arrow functions to get this behavior:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
DB' >DB</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
DB.filterUsers(filter: (this: User) => boolean): User[]' >filterUsers</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) filter:
(this: User) => boolean' >filter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span>
<span style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) this: User' >this</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
User' >User</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface User' >User</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">[</span>];</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const db: DB' >db</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const
getDB: () => DB' >getDB</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const admins: User[]' >admins</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='const db: DB' >db</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) DB.filterUsers(filter: (this: User) => boolean):

```

```
User[] > filterUsers </data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">() </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=></span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"><data-err>this</data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-err> <data-lsp lsp='any' >admin</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>The containing arrow function captures the global value of 'this'.</br>Element implicitly has an 'any' type because type 'typeof globalThis' has no index signature.</span> <span class="code">7041<br/>7017</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">The containing arrow function captures the global value of 'this'.</br>Element implicitly has an 'any' type because type 'typeof globalThis' has no index signature.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygOwAYAsBGdGc0AoASwDsAXoA6PlzmnM8ff2LS+amlBskgA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

## Other Types to Know About

There are some additional types you'll want to recognize that appear often when working with function types. Like all types, you can use them everywhere, but these are especially relevant in the context of functions.

### void

`void` represents the return value of functions which don't return a value. It's the inferred type any time a function doesn't have any `return` statements, or doesn't return any explicit value from those return statements:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// The inferred return type is void</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function noop(): void' >noop</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEBUAsFNQSwHYDNoCdXQCagwFwK6oKi4CeADr+</div> </pre>
```

In JavaScript, a function that doesn't return any value will implicitly return the value `undefined`. However, `void` and `undefined` are not the same thing in TypeScript. There are further details at the end of this chapter.

`void` is not the same as `undefined`.

## object

The special type `object` refers to any value that isn't a primitive (`string`, `number`, `boolean`, `symbol`, `null`, or `undefined`). This is different from the *empty object type* `{ }`, and also different from the global type `Object`. It's very likely you will never use `Object`.

`object` is not `Object`. **Always** use `object`!

Note that in JavaScript, function values are objects: They have properties, have `Object.prototype` in their prototype chain, are `instanceof Object`, you can call `Object.keys` on them, and so on. For this reason, function types are considered to be `objects` in TypeScript.

## unknown

The `unknown` type represents *any* value. This is similar to the `any` type, but is safer because it's not legal to do anything with an `unknown` value:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
f1(a: any): void' >f1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color:
#000000">) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: any' >a</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='any' >b</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #008000">//
OK</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f2(a: unknown): void' >f2</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) a: unknown' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">unknown</span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-
err><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: unknown' >a</data-lsp></data-err></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='any' >b</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error"><span>Object
is of type 'unknown'.</span><span class="code">2571</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Object is of type 'unknown'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDsBGAUAGYCuAdgMYA'></div></pre>

This is useful when describing function types because you can describe functions that accept any value without having `any` values in your function body.

Conversely, you can describe a function that returns a value of unknown type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function safeParse(s: string): unknown'>safeParse</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string'>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99">unknown</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var JSON: JSON'>JSON</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) JSON.parse(text: string, reviver?: ((this: any, key: string, value: any) => any) | undefined): any'>parse</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string'>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Need to be careful with &apos;obj&apos;:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const obj: unknown'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function safeParse(s: string): unknown'>safeParse</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const someRandomString: string'>someRandomString</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEYD2A7AzgF3mpBbEASICsHgMoYwIYAK4Z+vdgDNBKMbiqpsUcSAAKsNCAAUaRpmp0AllykBrFEgDuKeAG928eHAYCYVgFJkA8gDkAdAAc1TT'></div></pre>
```

`never`

Some functions *never* return a value:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fail(msg: string): never'>fail</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) msg: string'>msg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code></div></pre>
```



```

style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">never</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">throw</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Error: ErrorConstructor&#13;new (message?:
string | undefined) => Error' >Error</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) msg: string' >msg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMAhjANgCgLYGcDmAXIrlAE4xj4
</div> </pre>

```

The `never` type represents values which are *never* observed. In a return type, this means that the function throws an exception or terminates execution of the program.

`never` also appears when TypeScript determines there's nothing left in a union.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
fn(x: string | number): void' >fn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number' >x</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string | number' >x</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"string"</span>
<span style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000"> // do something</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number'
>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"number"</span> <span style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000"> // do something
else</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">else</span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: never' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> <span
style="color: #008000"> // has type 'never'!</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span

```

```
style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'>
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMMAKAHgLkQZygJxjAHNEAfRM
mql6ADciJqlxgCGOliClogA5GD0AG6M+QCE0eyWQA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

## Function

The global type `Function` describes properties like `bind`, `call`, `apply`, and others present on all function values in JavaScript. It also has the special property that values of type `Function` can always be called; these calls return `any`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(f: Function): void' >doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) f: Function'
>f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='interface Function' >Function</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) f: Function' >f</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span>
</span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAEzgZTgWwKZQBYxgDmAFMAF;
</div></pre>
```

This is an *untyped function call* and is generally best avoided because of the unsafe `any` return type.

If you need to accept an arbitrary function but don't intend to call it, the type `() => void` is generally safer.

## Rest Parameters and Arguments

```
<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Functions/rest_parameters'>Rest Parameters</a><br/> <a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Operators/Spread_syntax'>Spread Syntax</a><br/> </p>
</blockquote>
```

## Rest Parameters

In addition to using optional parameters or overloads to make functions that can accept a variety of fixed argument counts, we can also define functions that take an *unbounded* number of arguments using *rest parameters*.

A rest parameter appears after all other parameters, and uses the `...` syntax:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
multiply(n: number, ...m: number[]): number[]' >multiply</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000"><(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'
>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span>...</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: number[]' >m</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000">[]</span>}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: number[]' >m</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Array&lt;number>.map&lt;number>(callbackfn: (value: number, index: number, array:
number[]) => number, thisArg?: any): number[]' >map</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">(<(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number'
>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number' >n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> *
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// &apos;a&apos;
gets value [10, 20, 30, 40]</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const a: number[]' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function multiply(n: number, ...m: number[]):
number[]' >multiply</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(<(</span><span
style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">4</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLGlg9mABAWxAG1gBzQTWBRgBciYlyARgK
</div></pre>
```

In TypeScript, the type annotation on these parameters is implicitly `any[]` instead of `any`, and any type annotation given must be of the form `Array<T>` or `T[]`, or a tuple type (which we'll learn about later).

## Rest Arguments

Conversely, we can *provide* a variable number of arguments from an array using the spread syntax. For example, the `push` method of arrays takes any number of arguments:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const arr1: number[]'>arr1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const arr2: number[]'>arr2</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #098658">4</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">5</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">6</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const arr1: number[]'>arr1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array<number>.push(...items: number[]): number'>push</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const arr2: number[]'>arr2</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLgBAhgJwQRhgXhgbWQGhgJwGYBdAbgC'></div></pre>
```

Note that in general, TypeScript does not assume that arrays are immutable. This can lead to some surprising behavior:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Inferred type is number[] -- "an array with zero or more numbers",</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// not specifically two numbers</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const args: number[]'>args</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #098658">8</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #098658">5</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const angle: number'>angle</data-lsp></span></code></div></pre>
```

```

</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='var Math: Math' >Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.atan2(y: number, x: number): number'
>atan2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const args: number[]' >args</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Expected 2 arguments, but got 0 or
more.</span> <span class="code">2556</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Expected 2
arguments, but got 0 or more.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYMDYBQJQBJAOwDMZp
</div> </pre>

```

The best fix for this situation depends a bit on your code, but in general a `const` context is the most straightforward solution:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// Inferred as 2-
length tuple</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const args:
readonly [8, 5]' >args</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = [</span> <span
style="color: #098658">8</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#098658">5</span> <span style="color: #000000">] </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">as</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">
<data-lsp lsp='any' >const</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// OK</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const angle: number' >angle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'
>Math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.atan2(y: number, x: number): number' >atan2</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='const args: readonly [8, 5]' >args</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEkDsDMFMCD6wCagIYGdQCYC0AbWSAcwBcALL
</div> </pre>

```

Using rest arguments may require turning on [downlevelIteration](#) when targeting older runtimes.

<!-- TODO link to downlevel iteration -->

## Parameter Destructuring

<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Operators/Destructuring\_assignment'>Destructuring Assignment</a><br/> </p> </blockquote>

You can use parameter destructuring to conveniently unpack objects provided as an argument into one or more local variables in the function body. In JavaScript, it looks like this:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">sum</span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color: #001080">a</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080">b</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080">c</span><span style="color: #000000"> }) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">console</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">log</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">a</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080">b</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080">c</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26">sum</span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color: #001080">a</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080">b</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080">c</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">9</span><span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

The type annotation for the object goes after the destructuring syntax:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
sum({ a, b, c } : {&#13; a: number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13;}) :
void' >sum</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='var a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var b: number' >b</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var c:
number' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> } : { </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) b: number'
>b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
```

```
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) c: number' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">; </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000"> }} {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var b: number'
>b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='var c: number' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAZxAWwBQG9EEMA0iARoRIgL4
</div></pre>
```

This can look a bit verbose, but you can use a named type here as well:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Same as prior
example</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ABC =
{&#13; a: number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13;}' >ABC</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) b: number' >b</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) c:
number' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function sum({ a, b, c }: ABC): void' >sum</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='var a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var b: number' >b</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var c: number' >c</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='type ABC = {&#13; a: number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13;}'
>ABC</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)}</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
```

```
lsp='var a: number' >a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var b: number' >b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var c: number' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEGUEMFsFNUgZ1ABwE4EsD2bSwB4woA2sAUAC'></div></pre>
```

## Assignability of Functions

### Return type `void`

The `void` return type for functions can produce some unusual, but expected behavior.

Contextual typing with a return type of `void` does **not** force functions to **not** return something. Another way to say this is a contextual function type with a `void` return type ( `type vf = () => void` ), when implemented, can return *any* other value, but it will be ignored.

Thus, the following implementations of the type `() => void` are valid:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type voidFunc = () => void' >voidFunc</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='const f1: voidFunc' >f1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type voidFunc = () => void' >voidFunc</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">true</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='const f2: voidFunc' >f2</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type voidFunc = () => void' >voidFunc</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">true</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span></div></code></pre>
```



```
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const f3: voidFunc' >f3</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type voidFunc = () => void'
>voidFunc</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">true</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAbg9gSwCYDECuA7AxlAvFACgEo8A+WR
</div> </pre>
```

And when the return value of one of these functions is assigned to another variable, it will retain the type of `void`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const v1:
void' >v1</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const f1: () => void' >f1</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const v2:
void' >v2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const f2: () => void' >f2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const v3:
void' >v3</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const f3: () => void' >f3</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAbg9gSwCYDECuA7AxlAvFACgEo8A+WR
</div> </pre>
```

This behavior exists so that the following code is valid even though `Array.prototype.push` returns a number and the `Array.prototype.forEach` method expects a function with a return type of `void`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const src:
number[]' >src</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = [</span> <span style="color:
#098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const dst: number[]' >dst</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
```

```
#000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">];  
</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const src:  
number[]' >src</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:  
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;number>.forEach(callbackfn: (value: number,  
index: number, array: number[]) => void, thisArg?: any): void' >forEach</data-lsp> </span> <span  
style="color: #000000">((</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) el:  
number' >el</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color:  
#0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">  
<data-lsp lsp='const dst: number[]' >dst</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.  
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)  
Array&lt;number>.push(...items: number[]): number' >push</data-lsp> </span> <span  
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) el:  
number' >el</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">));</span> </div> </code> <a  
class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLGBBBOwYF4YG0CMAaGAmHAzALoDcAUk  
</div> </pre>
```

There is one other special case to be aware of, when a literal function definition has a `void` return type, that function must **not** return anything.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function f2(): void' >f2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">// @ts-expect-error</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">true</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const f3: () => void' >f3</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000">(): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">// @ts-expect-error</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">true</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLGlg9mABMATAcGjQC5EDc4wAmiA3gFCK'></div> </pre>
```

For more on `void` please refer to these other documentation entries:

- [v1 handbook](#)
- [v2 handbook](#)
- [FAQ - "Why are functions returning non-void assignable to function returning void?"](#)

# Object Types

In JavaScript, the fundamental way that we group and pass around data is through objects. In TypeScript, we represent those through *object types*.

As we've seen, they can be anonymous:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}); string' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}'>person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number'>age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello "</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}'>person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAQwE4FN1QBQAd2oDOCAXIgN6'></div></pre>
```

or they can be named by using either an interface

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Person' >Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.age: number' >age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div></code></pre>
```

```
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: Person): string'
>greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: Person' >person</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Person'
>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello "</span><span
style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
person: Person' >person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.name: string' >name</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgArQM4HsTIN4BQyyA9CcRcg
</div></pre>
```

or a type alias.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
Person = {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}' >Person</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string'
>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age:
number' >age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function greet(person: Person): string' >greet</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
person: Person' >person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; name: string;&#13; age:
number;&#13;}' >Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">) {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Hello "</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) person: Person' >person</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name:
string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
```

```
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACHBOBnA9gOygXigbwFBSgHpCoA9ci-KVAQwFslAuKRYeAS1QHMBuKmrk2oBXOgCMEfAL59cAM2GoAxsHZooXeBAjAAFJCRpmcQ6gCUOKluDI</div></pre>
```

In all three examples above, we've written functions that take objects that contain the property `name` (which must be a `string`) and `age` (which must be a `number`).

## Property Modifiers

Each property in an object type can specify a couple of things: the type, whether the property is optional, and whether the property can be written to.

### Optional Properties

Much of the time, we'll find ourselves dealing with objects that *might* have a property set. In those cases, we can mark those properties as *optional* by adding a question mark ( `?` ) to the end of their names.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
PaintOptions'>PaintOptions</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape'>shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Shape'
>Shape</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
PaintOptions.xPos?: number | undefined'>xPos</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">?:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number | undefined'
>yPos</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void'>paintShape</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions'>opts</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:<
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface PaintOptions'
>PaintOptions</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span
```

```

style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function getShape(): Shape'
>getShape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void'
>paintShape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.xPos?:
number | undefined' >xPos</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts:
PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">({ </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape'
>shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number | undefined' >yPos</data-lsp>:
</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">100</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">({ </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.xPos?:
number | undefined' >xPos</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number | undefined' >yPos</data-lsp>:
</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">100</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8C+AUACYQIA2
MwmZiL6RiYsIGYcli7hAHTNhJkI5mC29sgAvBxcRYKS+ZqDuF28yPgCwwXc9nzjdrwANG5xlgCMAAzbUzi
ZrsZ5bu-uzoycTOGvul8g72+cbr9fT4kA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

In this example, both `xPos` and `yPos` are considered optional. We can choose to provide either of them, so every call above to `paintShape` is valid. All optionality really says is that if the property is set, it better have a specific type.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
PaintOptions' >PaintOptions</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-

```

```

lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Shape'
>Shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
PaintOptions.xPos?: number | undefined' >xPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">?: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number | undefined'
>yPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">?: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface PaintOptions'
>PaintOptions</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">// ...</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function getShape(): Shape'
>getShape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void'
>paintShape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">({ </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> });</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">({ </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) PaintOptions.shape: Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.xPos?:
number | undefined' >xPos</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #098658"> 100</span> <span style="color: #000000"> });</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8C+AUACYQIA2
MwmZiL6RiYsIGYcli7hAHTNhJkI5mC29sgAvBxcRYKS+ZqDuF28yPgCwwXc9nzjdrwANG5xlgCMAAzbUzi
</div> </pre>

```

We can also read from those properties - but when we do under `strictNullChecks`, TypeScript will tell us they're potentially `undefined`.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>

```



```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions'
>opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface PaintOptions' >PaintOptions</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let xPos: number | undefined' >xPos</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.&
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.xPos?: number |
undefined' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>xPos</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (property) PaintOptions.xPos?: number |
undefined</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let yPos: number | undefined' >yPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) opts:
PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number | undefined'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>yPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> (property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number | undefined</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000"> // ...</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8C+AUACYQIA2
</div> </pre>

```

In JavaScript, even if the property has never been set, we can still access it - it's just going to give us the value `undefined`. We can just handle `undefined` specially.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
paintShape(opts: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions'
>opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface PaintOptions' >PaintOptions</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let xPos: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>xPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span

```

```

style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
PaintOptions.xPos?: number | undefined' >xPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> === </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='var undefined'
>undefined</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ? </span> <span style="color:
#098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.xPos?:
number' >xPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span
class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> let xPos:
number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let yPos: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>yPos</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) opts: PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.&
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number |
undefined' >yPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='var undefined' >undefined</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> ? </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) opts:
PaintOptions' >opts</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) PaintOptions.yPos?: number' >yPos</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span>
<span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> let yPos: number</span> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">>// ...</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8C+AUACYQIA2
</div> </pre>

```

Note that this pattern of setting defaults for unspecified values is so common that JavaScript has syntax to support it.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
paintShape({ shape, xPos, yPos }: PaintOptions): void' >paintShape</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">({ </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var shape:
Shape' >shape</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var xPos: number' >xPos</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var yPos: number' >yPos</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> }; </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
PaintOptions' >PaintOptions</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div>

```

```

<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'> console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"x coordinate at"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='var xPos: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>xPos</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span
class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>var xPos:
number</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'> console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void'>log</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"y coordinate at"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='var yPos: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>yPos</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span
class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>var yPos:
number</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMoAs4AcUG8C+AUACYQIA2
U2t7Z3d-QA9Ww6unv7Bkc9x5knPkFmUBYqfVfMNvfeP5EPX8N6-wnwQA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Here we used [a destructuring pattern](#) for `paintShape`'s parameter, and provided [default values](#) for `xPos` and `yPos`. Now `xPos` and `yPos` are both definitely present within the body of `paintShape`, but optional for any callers to `paintShape`.

Note that there is currently no way to place type annotations within destructuring patterns. This is because the following syntax already means something different in JavaScript.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
draw({ shape: Shape, xPos: number }: {&#13; shape: any;&#13; xPos?: number |
undefined;&#13;}); void'>draw</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">({
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) shape: any'>shape</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='var Shape: any'>Shape</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) xPos?: number | undefined'>xPos</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='var number: number'>number</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">=
</span><span style="color: #098658">100</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #008000">/*...*/</span><span style="color: #000000"> }) {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-

```

```

lsp lsp='function render(x: unknown): any' >render</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >shape</data-
lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class="error">
<span>Cannot find name 'shape'. Did you mean 'Shape'?</span><span
class="code">2552</span></span><span class="error-behind">Cannot find name 'shape'. Did
you mean 'Shape'?</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function render(x: unknown): any' >render</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err>
<data-lsp lsp='any' >xPos</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);
</span></div><span class="error"><span>Cannot find name 'xPos'.</span><span
class="code">2304</span></span><span class="error-behind">Cannot find name 'xPos'.
</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsEkFsAOAbAlgY1QFwIKQJ4BcoAZgblDOA
</div></pre>

```

In an object destructuring pattern, `shape: Shape` means "grab the property `shape` and redefine it locally as a variable named `Shape`". Likewise `xPos: number` creates a variable named `number` whose value is based on the parameter's `xPos`.

## readonly Properties

Properties can also be marked as `readonly` for TypeScript. While it won't change any behavior at runtime, a property marked as `readonly` can't be written to during type-checking.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
SomeType' >SomeType</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) SomeType.prop: string' >prop</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(obj: SomeType): void' >doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: SomeType'
>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='interface SomeType' >SomeType</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span>}</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #008000">// We can read from &apos;obj.prop&apos;.</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp

```

```

lsp='var console: Console' > console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">`prop has the value &apos;</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: SomeType' >obj</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000FF">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) SomeType.prop: string' >prop</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span>
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">&apos;.</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#008000">`// But we can&apos;t re-assign it.</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: SomeType'
>obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-err> <data-lsp lsp='(property) SomeType.prop: string' >prop</data-lsp> </data-err>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Cannot assign to
'prop' because it is a read-only property.</span> <span class="code">2540</span> </span>
<span class="error-behind">Cannot assign to 'prop' because it is a read-only property.</span>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYAsAGAUJYB2ALjAGYC
lBqcUQ4CUgkiTgVWwADVM5QK0pEUGs6ADdKCT06OIAshKSuuU0Mss8NLP8AIT0SUAB3YNC4yaEAWI
</div> </pre>

```

Using the `readonly` modifier doesn't necessarily imply that a value is totally immutable - or in other words, that its internal contents can't be changed. It just means the property itself can't be re-written to.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Home' >Home</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">readonly</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Home.resident: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age:
number;&#13;}' >resident</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: { </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">; </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) age:
number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> };</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function visitForBirthday(home: Home): void' >visitForBirthday</data-

```

```

lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) home: Home' >home</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Home' >Home</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">// We can read and update properties from
&apos;home.resident&apos;.</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">( </span> <span style="color: #A31515">'Happy birthday </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">${ </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) home: Home'
>home</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Home.resident: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age:
number;&#13;}' >resident</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">} </span> <span style="color: #A31515">'! </span> <span
style="color: #000000">); </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) home: Home' >home</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Home.resident: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}'
>resident</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> ++; </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function </span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function evict(home: Home): void'
>evict</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) home: Home' >home</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Home'
>Home</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) { </span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000">// But we can&apos;t write
to the &apos;resident&apos; property itself on a &apos;Home&apos;.</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) home: Home' >home</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.&
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Home.resident:
{&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}' >resident</data-lsp> </data-err>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = { </span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Cannot
assign to 'resident' because it is a read-only property.</span> <span class="code">2540</span>
</span> <span class="error-behind">Cannot assign to 'resident' because it is a read-only property.
</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-lsp>: </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Victor the Evictor" </span> <span
style="color: #000000">, </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number' >age</data-lsp>:

```

```

</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">42</span> <span
style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> };
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYAsAGAUAJYB2ALjAGYC
</div> </pre>

```

It's important to manage expectations of what `readonly` implies. It's useful to signal intent during development time for TypeScript on how an object should be used. TypeScript doesn't factor in whether properties on two types are `readonly` when checking whether those types are compatible, so `readonly` properties can also change via aliasing.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Person' >Person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Person.name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface ReadonlyPerson'
>ReadonlyPerson</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">readonly</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) ReadonlyPerson.name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) ReadonlyPerson.age: number'
>age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let writablePerson: Person' >writablePerson</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Person'
>Person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Person.name: string' >name</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"Person McPersonface"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>

```

```

</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.age: number' >age</data-lsp></span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">42</span> <span style="color: #000000">,
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// works</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='let readonlyPerson: ReadonlyPerson' >readonlyPerson</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='interface ReadonlyPerson' >ReadonlyPerson</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let writablePerson: Person'
>writablePerson</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let readonlyPerson:
ReadonlyPerson' >readonlyPerson</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) ReadonlyPerson.age: number'
>age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">); </span> <span style="color:
#008000">// prints &apos;42&apos;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='let writablePerson: Person' >writablePerson</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Person.age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + +;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let
readonlyPerson: ReadonlyPerson' >readonlyPerson</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) ReadonlyPerson.age:
number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">); </span> <span style="color:
#008000">// prints &apos;43&apos;</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgArQM4HsTIN4BQyyIcAthAFz
KEJGKIYZAHd6YOLzdqGtSBOMgAvPispBTUAEQhuACyCANwSLEANKzsnAAsAExZgiwEAPSIXIhQANYYYBG.
hAJJQg42G4AdlpYDAAUTdYJEzkAIEzl5cgADqZgGMgA5AUHBH0DAd0gyxwA1DcsoyDjEFMz87qLI9cQax:
</div> </pre>

```

## Index Signatures

Sometimes you don't know all the names of a type's properties ahead of time, but you do know the shape of the values.

In those cases you can use an index signature to describe the types of possible values, for example:



```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
StringArray' >StringArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='(parameter) index: number' >index</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">]; </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const myArray: StringArray' >myArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface StringArray'
>StringArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function getStringArray(): StringArray' >getStringArray</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const secondItem: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>secondItem</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const myArray: StringArray' >myArray</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">[</span> <span style="color: #098658"> 1</span> <span
style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> const secondItem: string</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwHMQMBIDGLV.
gbBl5GDk0eHQZ4AF5CYnDtPIYhP1QAI3A8YABJJRsYwODI4wBGRyFRlyqAPQB+IA'>Try</a> </div>
</pre>

```

Above, we have a `StringArray` interface which has an index signature. This index signature states that when a `StringArray` is indexed with a `number`, it will return a `string`.

An index signature property type must be either 'string' or 'number'.

<details> <summary>It is possible to support both types of indexers...</summary> <p>It is possible to support both types of indexers, but the type returned from a numeric indexer must be a subtype of the type returned from the string indexer. This is because when indexing with a `number`, JavaScript will actually convert that to a `string` before indexing into an object. That means that indexing with `100` (a `number`) is the same thing as indexing with `"100"` (a `string`), so the two need to be consistent.</p> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Animal' >Animal</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Animal.name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>

```
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Animal'
>Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Dog.breed: string' >breed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000">// Error: indexing with a numeric string might get you a completely separate type of
Animal!</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
NotOkay' >NotOkay</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]: </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Animal' >Animal</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Numeric index type 'Animal'
is not assignable to string index type 'Dog'.</span><span class="code">2413</span></span>
<span class="error-behind">Numeric index type 'Animal' is not assignable to string index type
'Dog'.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:
#000000">]: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwBYCMBmAUCBlgC7QCWA
</div></pre></div>
```

While string index signatures are a powerful way to describe the "dictionary" pattern, they also enforce that all properties match their return type. This is because a string index declares that `obj.property` is also available as `obj["property"]`. In the following example, `name`'s type does not match the string index's type, and the type checker gives an error:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
NumberDictionary' >NumberDictionary</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) index: string' >index</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
```

```

style="color: #000000">]: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) NumberDictionary.length:
number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> <span style="color:
#008000">// ok</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='(property) NumberDictionary.name: string'
>name</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>Property 'name' of type 'string' is not assignable to string index type
'number'.</span> <span class="code">2411</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Property 'name' of type 'string' is not assignable to string index type 'number'.</span>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwBYCMWBQIIZ4IVMdcBLAC
</div> </pre>

```

However, properties of different types are acceptable if the index signature is a union of the property types:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
NumberOrStringDictionary' >NumberOrStringDictionary</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) index: string' >index</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">]; </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
NumberOrStringDictionary.length: number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">; </span> <span style="color: #008000">// ok, length is a number</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) NumberOrStringDictionary.name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">; </span> <span style="color: #008000">// ok, name is a string</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgHIFcC2AjaB5KAZTCIAHMARY
</div> </pre>

```

Finally, you can make index signatures `readonly` in order to prevent assignment to their indices:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
ReadOnlyStringArray' >ReadOnlyStringArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">readonly</span> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) index: number' >index</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000">]:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let myArray:
ReadOnlyStringArray' >myArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface ReadOnlyStringArray'
>ReadOnlyStringArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function getReadOnlyStringArray(): ReadOnlyStringArray'
>getReadOnlyStringArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">()</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let myArray: ReadOnlyStringArray'
>myArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">] =</span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> "Mallory"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>Index signature in type 'ReadOnlyStringArray' only permits reading.</span>
<span class="code">2542</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Index signature in type
'ReadonlyStringArray' only permits reading.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgtIAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwHMQMAIEKYAe
GX4FCsboi0z4FoAiAFkoCAgTWIHZIA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

You can't set `myArray[2]` because the index signature is `readonly`.

## Extending Types

It's pretty common to have types that might be more specific versions of other types. For example, we might have a `BasicAddress` type that describes the fields necessary for sending letters and packages in the U.S.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
BasicAddress' >BasicAddress</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.name?: string | undefined' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">?:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">

```

```

</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.street: string'
>street</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
BasicAddress.city: string' >city</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) BasicAddress.country: string' >country</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.postalCode: string'
>postalCode</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEJwM7AQQQCZ5QQYblDeAI
</div> </pre>

```

In some situations that's enough, but addresses often have a unit number associated with them if the building at an address has multiple units. We can then describe an `AddressWithUnit`.

```

<!-- prettier-ignore --> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color:
#FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface AddressWithUnit' >AddressWithUnit</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
AddressWithUnit.name?: string | undefined' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">?: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) AddressWithUnit.unit: string' >unit</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) AddressWithUnit.street: string'
>street</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
AddressWithUnit.city: string' >city</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) AddressWithUnit.country: string' >country</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) AddressWithUnit.postalCode: string'

```

```
>postalCode</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLpgpTgZghgYwgAgIIBN1QgZxwdWDAAAsBVEI5A</div></pre>
```

This does the job, but the downside here is that we had to repeat all the other fields from `BasicAddress` when our changes were purely additive. Instead, we can extend the original `BasicAddress` type and just add the new fields that are unique to `AddressWithUnit`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface BasicAddress'>BasicAddress</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.name?: string | undefined'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.street: string'>street</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.city: string'>city</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.country: string'>country</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BasicAddress.postalCode: string'>postalCode</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface AddressWithUnit'>AddressWithUnit</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface BasicAddress'>BasicAddress</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) AddressWithUnit.unit: string'>unit</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEJwM7AQQQCZ5QQYblDeA'

```
</div></pre>
```

The `extends` keyword on an `interface` allows us to effectively copy members from other named types, and add whatever new members we want. This can be useful for cutting down the amount of type declaration boilerplate we have to write, and for signaling intent that several different declarations of the same property might be related. For example, `AddressWithUnit` didn't need to repeat the `street` property, and because `street` originates from `BasicAddress`, a reader will know that those two types are related in some way.

`interface`s can also extend from multiple types.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Colorful'>Colorful</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Colorful.color: string'>color</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Circle'>Circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number'>radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface ColorfulCircle'>ColorfulCircle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Colorful'>Colorful</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Circle'>Circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const cc: ColorfulCircle'>cc</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface ColorfulCircle'>ColorfulCircle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Colorful.color: string'>color</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #A31515">"red"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number'>radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span></span></div></code></div></pre>
```

```
style="color: #098658">42</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMIHsA27YFdPIDeAUMsgljgF:
</div></pre>
```

## Intersection Types

`interface`s allowed us to build up new types from other types by extending them. TypeScript provides another construct called *intersection types* that is mainly used to combine existing object types.

An intersection type is defined using the `&` operator.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Colorful' >Colorful</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Colorful.color: string' >color</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:
</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Circle' >Circle</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number'
>radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type ColorfulCircle = Colorful &amp; Circle' >ColorfulCircle</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='interface Colorful' >Colorful</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> & </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Circle' >Circle</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMIHsA27YFdPIDeAUMsgljgF:
</div></pre>
```

Here, we've intersected `Colorful` and `Circle` to produce a new type that has all the members of `Colorful` and `Circle`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
```



```

draw(circle: Colorful & Circle): void' >draw</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) circle: Colorful
& Circle' >circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Colorful' >Colorful</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> & </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Circle'
>Circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">`Color was
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) circle: Colorful & Circle' >circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000FF">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Colorful.color:
string' >color</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color:
#A31515">`</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">`Radius was
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) circle: Colorful & Circle' >circle</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000FF">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius:
number' >radius</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color:
#A31515">`</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">`//
okay</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
draw(circle: Colorful & Circle): void' >draw</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">({</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Colorful.color:
string' >color</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#A31515">"blue"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.radius: number' >radius</data-lsp>:</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #098658">42</span><span style="color:
#000000">});</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">`// oops</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function draw(circle:
Colorful & Circle): void' >draw</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({</span>
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Colorful.color: string'
>color</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#A31515">"red"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) radius: number' >radius</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #098658">42</span><span style="color: #000000">});
</span></div><span class="error"><span>Argument of type '{ color: string; radius: number; }' is
not assignable to parameter of type 'Colorful & Circle'. Object literal may only specify known
properties, but 'radius' does not exist in type 'Colorful & Circle'. Did you mean to write 'radius'?

```

```
</span> <span class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Argument of  
type '{ color: string; radius: number; }' is not assignable to parameter of type 'Colorful & Circle'.  
Object literal may only specify known properties, but 'radius' does not exist in type 'Colorful &  
Circle'. Did you mean to write 'radius'?</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAJYB2ALjAGYc  
</div> </pre>
```

## Interfaces vs. Intersections

We just looked at two ways to combine types which are similar, but are actually subtly different. With interfaces, we could use an `extends` clause to extend from other types, and we were able to do something similar with intersections and name the result with a type alias. The principle difference between the two is how conflicts are handled, and that difference is typically one of the main reasons why you'd pick one over the other between an interface and a type alias of an intersection type.

`<!-- For example, two types can declare the same property in an interface. TODO -->`

## Generic Object Types

Let's imagine a `Box` type that can contain any value - `string` `s`, `number` `s`, `Giraffe` `s`, whatever.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div  
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>  
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface  
Box' >Box</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>  
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)  
Box.contents: any' >contents</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div  
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEIHsAeyDeAoZZBdcCcAZwC5  
</div> </pre>
```

Right now, the `contents` property is typed as `any`, which works, but can lead to accidents down the line.

We could instead use `unknown`, but that would mean that in cases where we already know the type of `contents`, we'd need to do precautionary checks, or use error-prone type assertions.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div  
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>  
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
```

```

Box' > Box</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Box.contents: unknown' > contents</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> unknown</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: Box' >x</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Box' >Box</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.contents:
unknown' > contents</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #A31515"> "hello world"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span></div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#008000"> </span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> typeof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let x: Box' >x</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.contents: unknown' > contents</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "string"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
> console</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: Box'
>x</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.contents: string' > contents</data-lsp></span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toLowerCase():
string' >toLowerCase</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span></div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#008000"> </span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' > console</data-lsp></span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">((</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: Box' >x</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.contents: unknown'
> contents</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB"> as</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> string</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toLowerCase(): string' >toLowerCase</data-lsp></span> <span
style="color: #000000">());</span></div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgElHsAeyDeAoZZBdcCcAZwC5
</div></pre>

```

One type safe approach would be to instead scaffold out different `Box` types for every type of contents .

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface NumberBox' >NumberBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) NumberBox.contents: number' >contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface StringBox' >StringBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) StringBox.contents: string' >contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface BooleanBox' >BooleanBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BooleanBox.contents: boolean' >contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFAEsA7AFxgDMBDAY'></div></pre>
```

But that means we'll have to create different functions, or overloads of functions, to operate on these types.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function setContents(box: StringBox, newContents: string): void (+2 overloads)' >setContents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) box: StringBox' >box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface StringBox' >StringBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newContents: string' >newContents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span>
```

```

style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
setContents(box: NumberBox, newContents: number): void (+2 overloads)' >setContents</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) box: NumberBox' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface NumberBox' >NumberBox</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newContents: number' >newContents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
setContents(box: BooleanBox, newContents: boolean): void (+2 overloads)' >setContents</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) box: BooleanBox' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface BooleanBox' >BooleanBox</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newContents: boolean' >newContents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color:
#000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
setContents(box: StringBox, newContents: string): void (+2 overloads)' >setContents</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) box: {&#13; contents: any;&#13;}' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
contents: any' >contents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color: #000000"> }, </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newContents: any' >newContents</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> ) { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) box: {&#13; contents:
any;&#13;}' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) contents: any' >contents</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newContents: any' >newContents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">; </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgHIFcC2AjaAhAewA9kBvAKGv
</div> </pre>

```

That's a lot of boilerplate. Moreover, we might later need to introduce new types and overloads. This is frustrating, since our box types and overloads are all effectively the same.

Instead, we can make a *generic* `Box` type which declares a *type parameter*.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Box&lt;Type>'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&lt;Type>.contents: Type'>contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgElHsAeAeAKgTwAcIA+ZAbw</div></pre>
```

You might read this as “A `Box` of `Type` is something whose `contents` have type `Type`”. Later on, when we refer to `Box`, we have to give a *type argument* in place of `Type`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let box: Box&lt;string>'>box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Box&lt;Type>'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgElHsAeAeAKgTwAcIA+ZAbw</div></pre>
```

Think of `Box` as a template for a real type, where `Type` is a placeholder that will get replaced with some other type. When TypeScript sees `Box<string>`, it will replace every instance of `Type` in `Box<Type>` with `string`, and end up working with something like `{ contents: string }`. In other words, `Box<string>` and our earlier `StringBox` work identically.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Box&lt;Type>'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&lt;Type>.contents: Type'>contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
```

```

Box<Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface StringBox' >StringBox</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) StringBox.contents: string'
>contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"></span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let boxA: Box<Type>string' >boxA</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Box<Type>'
>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; = {</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box<Type>string' >contents</data-lsp>:
</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let boxA: Box<Type>string' >boxA</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Box<Type>string' >contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div
class='arrow'></div>(property) Box<Type>string</span> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let boxB: StringBox' >boxB</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
StringBox' >StringBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) StringBox.contents: string' >contents</data-
lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"world"
</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='let boxB: StringBox' >boxB</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) StringBox.contents:
string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>contents</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>(property) StringBox.contents: string</span></code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEIHsAeAeAKgTwAcIA+ZAbw(
</div></pre>

```

`Box` is reusable in that `Type` can be substituted with anything. That means that when we need a box for a new type, we don't need to declare a new `Box` type at all (though we certainly could if we wanted to).

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Box&lt;Type>' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt; </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Box&lt;Type>.contents: Type' >contents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Apple' >Apple</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> { </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000">>// ...</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">>// Same as &apos;{
contents: Apple }&apos;.</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type AppleBox = Box&lt;Apple>' >AppleBox</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Box&lt;Type>' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt; </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Apple' >Apple</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &gt;; </span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEIHSaEaAKgTwAcIA+ZAbw(
</div> </pre>

```

This also means that we can avoid overloads entirely by instead using [generic functions](#).

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
setContents&lt;Type>(box: Box&lt;Type>, newContents: Type): void' >setContents</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt; </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in setContents&lt;Type>(box: Box&lt;Type>, newContents:
Type): void' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) box: Box&lt;Type>' >box</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='interface Box&lt;Type>' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
setContents&lt;Type>(box: Box&lt;Type>, newContents: Type): void' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;; </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newContents: Type' >newContents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
setContents&lt;Type>(box: Box&lt;Type>, newContents: Type): void' >Type</data-lsp>

```



```

</span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) box:
Box&lt;Type>' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&lt;Type>.contents: Type'
>contents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newContents: Type' >newContents</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">>
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEIHsAeAeAKgTwAcIA+ZAbw(
</div> </pre>

```

It is worth noting that type aliases can also be generic. We could have defined our new `Box<Type>` interface, which was:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Box&lt;Type>' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Box&lt;Type>.contents: Type' >contents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:<
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgEIHsAeAeAKgTwAcIA+ZAbw(
</div> </pre>

```

by using a type alias instead:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
Box&lt;Type> = {&#13; contents: Type;&#13;}' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in type Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt; = {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) contents: Type' >contents</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:< </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in type Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">>
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'

```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAQg9gDwDwBVwQHxQLxQN4BQUUAxn/  
</div></pre>

Since type aliases, unlike interfaces, can describe more than just object types, we can also use them to write other kinds of generic helper types.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
OrNull&lt;Type> = Type | null' >OrNull</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
type OrNull&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; =
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
OrNull&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span
style="color: #267F99">null</span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OneOrMany&lt;Type> = Type | Type[]'
>OneOrMany</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type OneOrMany&lt;Type>' >Type</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-
lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type OneOrMany&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in type OneOrMany&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">[];</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type OneOrManyOrNull&lt;Type> = OneOrMany&lt;Type> | null'
>OneOrManyOrNull</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
OneOrManyOrNull&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;
= </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OrNull&lt;Type> = Type | null'
>OrNull</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OneOrMany&lt;Type> = Type | Type[]' >OneOrMany</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in type OneOrManyOrNull&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">&gt;&gt;</span></div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span>
<span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type OneOrManyOrNull&lt;Type>&gt; =
OneOrMany&lt;Type>&gt; | null</span> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type OneOrManyOrNullStrings = OneOrMany&lt;string> | null'
>OneOrManyOrNullStrings</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OneOrManyOrNull&lt;Type> =
OneOrMany&lt;Type> | null' >OneOrManyOrNull</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:
#000000">&gt;</span></div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'>
```

```
<div class='arrow'></div>type OneOrManyOrNullStrings = OneOrMany<string> |
null</span></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDsGBQAXATwAdJQB5a/
</div></pre>
```

We'll circle back to type aliases in just a little bit.

## The Array Type

Generic object types are often some sort of container type that work independently of the type of elements they contain. It's ideal for data structures to work this way so that they're re-usable across different data types.

It turns out we've been working with a type just like that throughout this handbook: the `Array` type. Whenever we write out types like `number[]` or `string[]`, that's really just a shorthand for `Array<number>` and `Array<string>`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(value: Array<string>): void' >doSomething</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) value:
string[]' >value</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Array<T>' >Array</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">&gt;(</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let myArray:
string[]' >myArray</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">[] = [</span><span
style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span
style="color: #A31515">"world"</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// either of these work!</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function doSomething(value:
Array<string>): void' >doSomething</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let myArray: string[]' >myArray</data-
lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function doSomething(value: Array<string>): void'
>doSomething</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Array: ArrayConstructor&#13;new &lt;string>(...items: string[]) =>
string[] (+2 overloads)' >Array</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
```

```

style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span
style="color: #A31515">"world"</span><span style="color: #000000">));</span></div></code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAEzgZTgWwKZQBYxgDmAFAG4C
W2ESoA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Much like the `Box` type above, `Array` itself is a generic type.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Array&lt;Type>'>Array</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Array&lt;Type>'
>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #008000">/**</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">* Gets or sets the length of the array.</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">*/</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Array&lt;Type>.length: number'>length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:
</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#008000">/**</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">* Removes the last
element from an array and returns it.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000">*/</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;Type>.pop(): Type | undefined'
>pop</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">():</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Array&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">|</span><span style="color:
#267F99">undefined</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #008000">/**</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">* Appends new elements to an array, and returns the
new length of the array.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">
*/</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Array&lt;Type>.push(...items: Type[]): number'
>push</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(...</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) items: Type[]'>items</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter)
Type in Array&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[]</span>:
</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'

```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsBkEsBGauUAXATgVwKYCh5I0cMAzAQwG  
</div></pre>

Modern JavaScript also provides other data structures which are generic, like `Map<K, V>`, `Set<T>`, and `Promise<T>`. All this really means is that because of how `Map`, `Set`, and `Promise` behave, they can work with any sets of types.

## The `ReadonlyArray` Type

The `ReadonlyArray` is a special type that describes arrays that shouldn't be changed.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doStuff(values: ReadonlyArray<string>): void' >doStuff</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">): </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface ReadonlyArray<T>'
>ReadonlyArray</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;(</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// We can
read from &apos;values&apos;...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const copy: string[]' >copy</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
ReadonlyArray<string>.slice(start?: number | undefined, end?: number | undefined): string[]'
>slice</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">The first value is
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000FF">[</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color:
#000000FF">]</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color:
#A31515">`</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...but we can&apos;t mutate
&apos;values&apos;.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]'
>values</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >push</data-lsp></data-err> </span><span
```

```

style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello!"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Property 'push' does not
exist on type 'readonly string[]'.</span> <span class="code">2339</span> </span> <span
class="error-behind">Property 'push' does not exist on type 'readonly string[]'.</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQAzAVwDsBjAFw
</div> </pre>

```

Much like the `readonly` modifier for properties, it's mainly a tool we can use for intent. When we see a function that returns `ReadonlyArray` s, it tells us we're not meant to change the contents at all, and when we see a function that consumes `ReadonlyArray` s, it tells us that we can pass any array into that function without worrying that it will change its contents.

Unlike `Array`, there isn't a `ReadonlyArray` constructor that we can use.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-err> <data-lsp
lsp='any'>ReadonlyArray</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"red"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"green"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"blue"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>'ReadonlyArray' only refers to a type, but is being used as a value here.
</span> <span class="code">2693</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">'ReadonlyArray'
only refers to a type, but is being used as a value here.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwDYCcBmAUAHaQDuoASp.
</div> </pre>

```

Instead, we can assign regular `Array` s to `ReadonlyArray` s.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const
roArray: readonly string[]'>roArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface ReadonlyArray&lt;T'>
>ReadonlyArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;> = [</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"red"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"green"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"blue"</span> <span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> </code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLGbATiAgnOBDAngLhgJQKaoAm4ANusmu
</div> </pre>

```

Just as TypeScript provides a shorthand syntax for `Array<Type>` with `Type[]`, it also provides a shorthand syntax for `ReadonlyArray<Type>` with `readonly Type[]`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function doStuff(values: readonly string[]): void' >doStuff</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"><(/span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"><[]> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// We can read from &apos;values&apos;...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const copy: string[]' >copy</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) ReadonlyArray&lt;string>.slice(start?: number | undefined, end?: number | undefined): string[]' >slice</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"><(/span><span style="color: #A31515"> `The first value is </span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000FF">[</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000FF">]</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">`</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...but we can&apos;t mutate &apos;values&apos;.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) values: readonly string[]' >values</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >push</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000"><(/span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello!"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error"><span>Property 'push' does not exist on type 'readonly string[]'.</span><span class="code">2339</span><span class="error-behind">Property 'push' does not exist on type 'readonly string[]'.</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQAzAVwDsBjAFw'></div></pre>
```

One last thing to note is that unlike the `readonly` property modifier, assignability isn't bidirectional between regular `Array`s and `ReadonlyArray`s.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: readonly string[]'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #000000">] = [];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let y: string[]'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #000000">] = [];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: readonly string[]'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let y: string[]'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='let y: string[]'>y</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: readonly string[]'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>The type 'readonly string[]' is 'readonly' and cannot be assigned to the mutable type 'string[]'.</span><span class="code">4104</span></span><span class="error-behind">The type 'readonly string[]' is 'readonly' and cannot be assigned to the mutable type 'string[]'.</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygCwEYAMaBQAbSAF1AA9VpIf</div></pre>
```

## Tuple Types

A *tuple type* is another sort of `Array` type that knows exactly how many elements it contains, and exactly which types it contains at specific positions.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type StringNumberPair = [string, number]'>StringNumberPair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAysBOBLAdgcwHIFcC2AjC8ACglaLxQC8U</div></pre>
```

Here, `StringNumberPair` is a tuple type of `string` and `number`. Like `ReadonlyArray`, it has no representation at runtime, but is significant to TypeScript. To the type system, `StringNumberPair`



describes arrays whose `0` index contains a `string` and whose `1` index contains a `number`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(pair: [string, number]): void' >doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair: [string,
number]' >pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]>{</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const a: string'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
=</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair: [string, number]'
>pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class='popover-
prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const a: string</span> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const b:
number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>b</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> =</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair: [string,
number]' >pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class='popover-
prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const b: number</span> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>// ...</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function doSomething(pair: [string, number]): void'
>doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#098658">42</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAEdgZTgWwKZQBYxgDmAFAA4C
</div></pre>
```

If we try to index past the number of elements, we'll get an error.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(pair: [string, number]): void' >doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair: [string,
number]' >pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]>{</span></div><div class='line'>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000"> // ...</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const c:
undefined'> c</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair: [string, number]'> pair</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">[ </span><span style="color: #098658"><data-err>2</data-err> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div><span class="error"><span>Tuple type '[string,
number]' of length '2' has no element at index '2'.</span><span class="code">2493</span>
</span><span class="error-behind">Tuple type '[string, number]' of length '2' has no element at
index '2'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwBYCcBmAUAGYCuAdgMY/
</div> </pre>

```

We can also [destructure tuples](#) using JavaScript's array destructuring.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(stringHash: [string, number]): void'> doSomething</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
stringHash: [string, number]'> stringHash</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:
[ </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]) {</span><span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> [ </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const inputString: string'> inputString</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">, </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const hash: number'
> hash</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">] = </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) stringHash: [string, number]'> stringHash</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
> console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'> log</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const
inputString: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> inputString</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'> </div>const inputString: string</span> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console'> console</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'> log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='const hash: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> hash</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span

```

```
class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const hash: number</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAEzgZTgWwKZQBYxgDmAFAM5</div></pre>
```

Tuple types are useful in heavily convention-based APIs, where each element's meaning is "obvious". This gives us flexibility in whatever we want to name our variables when we destructure them. In the above example, we were able to name elements `0` and `1` to whatever we wanted.

However, since not every user holds the same view of what's obvious, it may be worth reconsidering whether using objects with descriptive property names may be better for your API.

Other than those length checks, simple tuple types like these are equivalent to types which are versions of `Array`s that declare properties for specific indexes, and that declare `length` with a numeric literal type.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface StringNumberPair'>StringNumberPair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000"> // specialized properties</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) StringNumberPair.length: 2'>length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000"> // Other &apos;Array<string | number> &apos; members...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) StringNumberPair.slice(start?: number | undefined, end?: number | undefined): Array<string | number>'>slice</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) start: number | undefined'>start</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) end: number | undefined'>end</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Array<T>'>Array</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"></span></code></pre>
```

```
style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'>
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgMpiqA5gOQK4C2ARtAApzB7sGh2JH1qXEGAL5AA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

Another thing you may be interested in is that tuples can have optional properties by writing out a question mark ( ? ) after an element's type). Optional tuple elements can only come at the end, and also affect the type of `length`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
Either2dOr3d = [number, number, (number | undefined)?]' >Either2dOr3d</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">?];</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function setCoordinate(coord: Either2dOr3d): void'
>setCoordinate</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) coord: Either2dOr3d' >coord</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
Either2dOr3d = [number, number, (number | undefined)?]' >Either2dOr3d</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const y: number'
>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const z: number | undefined' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>z</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">]</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) coord: Either2dOr3d' >coord</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div
class='arrow'></div>const z: number | undefined</span> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">`Provided coordinates had
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) coord: Either2dOr3d' >coord</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000FF">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) length: 2 | 3'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>length</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515"> dimensions`</span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div
```

```

class='arrow'></div>(property) length: 2 | 3</span> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"></span></div></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAoglsAFhATgJgCYHkUGYNQC8UA2gHYC
ALoDcAUPwBmFMgGNgcAPZkoAZwjAAwIKkoMcMgENgEABRjV6gFywEydNjwYAlFADe-
KFENk5wUgA9GIRgC9ulhcjDAFnAHpw52iY5wA9TkFnVzkpABsIADo0qQBzPQADAAUUKQA3OAwIAkM1
gGgA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Tuples can also have rest elements, which have to be an array/tuple type.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
StringNumberBooleans = [string, number, ...boolean[]]' >StringNumberBooleans</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">, ...</span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span
style="color: #000000">]</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type StringBooleansNumber = [string, ...boolean[], number]'
>StringBooleansNumber</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">, ...</span><span
style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">[], </span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type BooleansStringNumber = [...boolean[], string,
number]' >BooleansStringNumber</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [...
</span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">[],
</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span></div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAysBOBLAdgcwHIFcC2AjC8AQgPbEA2EAI
</div></pre>

```

- `StringNumberBooleans` describes a tuple whose first two elements are `string` and `number` respectively, but which may have any number of `boolean` s following.
- `StringBooleansNumber` describes a tuple whose first element is `string` and then any number of `boolean` s and ending with a `number` .
- `BooleansStringNumber` describes a tuple whose starting elements any number of `boolean` s and ending with a `string` then a `number` .

A tuple with a rest element has no set "length" - it only has a set of well-known elements in different positions.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const a:
StringNumberBooleans'> a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type StringNumberBooleans = [string, number, ...boolean[]]'
>StringNumberBooleans</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = [</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const b: StringNumberBooleans'> b</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='type StringNumberBooleans = [string, number, ...boolean[]]'>StringNumberBooleans</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = [</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"beautiful"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">true</span> <span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const c: StringNumberBooleans'> c</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
StringNumberBooleans = [string, number, ...boolean[]]'>StringNumberBooleans</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = [</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"world"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #098658">3</span> <span
style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">true</span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">false</span> <span style="color: #000000">,
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">true</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">false</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">true</span> <span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYsBOBLAdgcwHIFcC2AjC8AQgPbEA2EAI
OkGA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

Why might optional and rest elements be useful? Well, it allows TypeScript to correspond tuples with parameter lists. Tuples types can be used in [rest parameters and arguments](#), so that the following:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
readButtonInput(args_0: string, args_1: number, ...args_2: boolean[]): void'>readButtonInput</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(<...</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) args: [string, number, ...boolean[]]'>args</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: [</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">, ...</span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color:

```

```
#000000">[[]] {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> [ </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const version: number' >version</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, ...</span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const input: boolean[]' >input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">] = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) args: [string, number, ...boolean[]]' >args</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">; </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAJwKYEMAmAhEUoICSYADngBC</div></pre>
```

is basically equivalent to:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function readButtonInput(name: string, version: number, ...input: boolean[]): void' >readButtonInput</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) version: number' >version</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span>...</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) input: boolean[]' >input</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #000000">[]</span></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAJwKYEMAmAhEUoICSYADngBR</div></pre>
```

This is handy when you want to take a variable number of arguments with a rest parameter, and you need a minimum number of elements, but you don't want to introduce intermediate variables.

```
<!-- TODO do we need this example? For example, imagine we need to write a function that adds up `number`s based on arguments that get passed in. ```ts twoslash function sum(...args: number[]) { // ...} ``` We might feel like it makes little sense to take any fewer than 2 elements, so we want to require callers to provide at least 2 arguments. A first attempt might be ```ts twoslash function foo(a: number, b: number, ...args: number[]) { args.unshift(a, b); let result = 0; for (const value of args) { result += value; } return result; } ``` -->
```

## readonly Tuple Types

One final note about tuple types - tuples types have `readonly` variants, and can be specified by sticking a `readonly` modifier in front of them - just like with array shorthand syntax.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(pair: readonly [string, number]): void' >doSomething</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair:
readonly [string, number]' >pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]>)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// ...</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAEzgZTgWwKZQBYxgDmAFAA4C
</div></pre>
```

As you might expect, writing to any property of a `readonly` tuple isn't allowed in TypeScript.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
doSomething(pair: readonly [string, number]): void' >doSomething</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) pair:
readonly [string, number]' >pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]>)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) pair: readonly [string, number]' >pair</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">[</span><span style="color: #098658"><data-err>0</data-err></span><span
style="color: #000000">]</span>=</span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello!"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Cannot assign to '0' because
it is a read-only property.</span><span class="code">2540</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Cannot assign to '0' because it is a read-only property.</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwFYAsAGAUAGYCuAdgMYA
</div></pre>
```

Tuples tend to be created and left un-modified in most code, so annotating types as `readonly` tuples when possible is a good default. This is also important given that array literals with `const`



assertions will be inferred with `readonly` tuple types.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let point: readonly
[3, 4]'>point</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span><span style="color:
#098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#098658">4</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">
<data-lsp lsp='any'>const</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function distanceFromOrigin([x, y]:
[number, number]): number'>distanceFromOrigin</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var x: number'>x</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='var y: number'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): [</span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]) {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'>Math</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Math.sqrt(x: number): number'
>sqrt</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='var x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ** </span>
<span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000"> + </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var y: number'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> ** </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">);
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function distanceFromOrigin([x, y]:
[number, number]): number'>distanceFromOrigin</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='let point: readonly
[3, 4]'>point</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div>
<span class="error"><span>Argument of type 'readonly [3, 4]' is not assignable to parameter of
type '[number, number]'. The type 'readonly [3, 4]' is 'readonly' and cannot be assigned to the
mutable type '[number, number]'.</span><span class="code">2345</span></span><span
class="error-behind">Argument of type 'readonly [3, 4]' is not assignable to parameter of type
'[number, number]'. The type 'readonly [3, 4]' is 'readonly' and cannot be assigned to the mutable
type '[number, number]'.</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCDoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUADaQAuoADn,
</div></pre>
```

Here, `distanceFromOrigin` never modifies its elements, but expects a mutable tuple. Since `point`'s type was inferred as `readonly [3, 4]`, it won't be compatible with `[number,`

`number]` since that type can't guarantee `point`'s elements won't be mutated.

<!-- ## Other Kinds of Object Members Most of the declarations in object types: ### Method  
Syntax ### Call Signatures ### Construct Signatures ### Index Signatures -->

# Creating Types from Types

TypeScript's type system is very powerful because it allows expressing types *in terms of other types*.

The simplest form of this idea is generics, we actually have a wide variety of *type operators* available to us. It's also possible to express types in terms of *values* that we already have.

By combining various type operators, we can express complex operations and values in a succinct, maintainable way. In this section we'll cover ways to express a new type in terms of an existing type or value.

- [Generics](#) - Types which take parameters
- [Keyof Type Operator](#) - Using the `keyof` operator to create new types
- [Typeof Type Operator](#) - Using the `typeof` operator to create new types
- [Indexed Access Types](#) - Using `Type['a']` syntax to access a subset of a type
- [Conditional Types](#) - Types which act like if statements in the type system
- [Mapped Types](#) - Creating types by mapping each property in an existing type
- [Template Literal Types](#) - Mapped types which change properties via template literal strings

# Generics

A major part of software engineering is building components that not only have well-defined and consistent APIs, but are also reusable. Components that are capable of working on the data of today as well as the data of tomorrow will give you the most flexible capabilities for building up large software systems.

In languages like C# and Java, one of the main tools in the toolbox for creating reusable components is *generics*, that is, being able to create a component that can work over a variety of types rather than a single one. This allows users to consume these components and use their own types.

## Hello World of Generics

To start off, let's do the "hello world" of generics: the identity function. The identity function is a function that will return back whatever is passed in. You can think of this in a similar way to the `echo` command.

Without generics, we would either have to give the identity function a specific type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function identity(arg: number): number'>identity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: number'>arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">):</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: number'>arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFAQwCcBzALkTBAI</div></pre>
```

Or, we could describe the identity function using the `any` type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function identity(arg: any): any'>identity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
```

```

<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: any' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span
style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: any' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFAQwCcBzALkXzGv
</div> </pre>

```

While using `any` is certainly generic in that it will cause the function to accept any and all types for the type of `arg`, we actually are losing the information about what that type was when the function returns. If we passed in a number, the only information we have is that any type could be returned.

Instead, we need a way of capturing the type of the argument in such a way that we can also use it to denote what is being returned. Here, we will use a *type variable*, a special kind of variable that works on types rather than values.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type'
>arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFAFWwAc0A+ACg
</div> </pre>

```

We've now added a type variable `Type` to the identity function. This `Type` allows us to capture the type the user provides (e.g. `number`), so that we can use that information later. Here, we use `Type` again as the return type. On inspection, we can now see the same type is used for the argument and the return type. This allows us to traffic that type information in one side of the function and out the other.

We say that this version of the `identity` function is generic, as it works over a range of types. Unlike using `any`, it's also just as precise (ie, it doesn't lose any information) as the first `identity` function that used numbers for the argument and return type.

Once we've written the generic identity function, we can call it in one of two ways. The first way is to pass all of the arguments, including the type argument, to the function:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let output: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> output</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;string>(arg: string): string'> identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "myString"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> >;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> let output: string</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFWwAc0A+ACg'> </div> </pre>
```

Here we explicitly set `Type` to be `string` as one of the arguments to the function call, denoted using the `<>` around the arguments rather than `()`.

The second way is also perhaps the most common. Here we use *type argument inference* -- that is, we want the compiler to set the value of `Type` for us automatically based on the type of the argument we pass in:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let output: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'> output</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;&quot;myString&quot>(arg: &quot;myString&quot;): &quot;myString&quot;'> identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> <(</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "myString"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> >;</span> </span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> let output: string</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFWwAc0A+ACg8AegD8QA'> Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

Notice that we didn't have to explicitly pass the type in the angle brackets (`<>`); the compiler just looked at the value `"myString"`, and set `Type` to its type. While type argument inference can be a helpful tool to keep code shorter and more readable, you may need to explicitly pass in the type

arguments as we did in the previous example when the compiler fails to infer the type, as may happen in more complex examples.

## Working with Generic Type Variables

When you begin to use generics, you'll notice that when you create generic functions like `identity`, the compiler will enforce that you use any generically typed parameters in the body of the function correctly. That is, that you actually treat these parameters as if they could be any and all types.

Let's take our `identity` function from earlier:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFWwAc0A+ACg'></div></pre>
```

What if we want to also log the length of the argument `arg` to the console with each call? We might be tempted to write this:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >loggingIdentity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
```

```

loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp
lsp='any' >length</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div><span class="error"><span>Property 'length' does not exist on type 'Type'.</span><span
class="code">2339</span></span><span class="error-behind">Property 'length' does not exist
on type 'Type'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQAzAVwDsBjAFw
</div></pre>

```

When we do, the compiler will give us an error that we're using the `.length` member of `arg`, but nowhere have we said that `arg` has this member. Remember, we said earlier that these type variables stand in for any and all types, so someone using this function could have passed in a `number` instead, which does not have a `.length` member.

Let's say that we've actually intended this function to work on arrays of `Type` rather than `Type` directly. Since we're working with arrays, the `.length` member should be available. We can describe this just like we would create arrays of other types:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line dim'><span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type[]): Type[]'
>loggingIdentity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in loggingIdentity&lt;Type>
(arg: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type[]' >arg</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">[]</span></div><div class='line highlight'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'

```



```

> console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) arg: Type[]' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Array&lt;Type>.length: number'
>length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line
dim'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) arg: Type[]' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line dim'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAGzgcZTMaCSATAUzFigE8AeAFV
</div> </pre>

```

You can read the type of `loggingIdentity` as "the generic function `loggingIdentity` takes a type parameter `Type`, and an argument `arg` which is an array of `Type`s, and returns an array of `Type`s." If we passed in an array of numbers, we'd get an array of numbers back out, as `Type` would bind to `number`. This allows us to use our generic type variable `Type` as part of the types we're working with, rather than the whole type, giving us greater flexibility.

We can alternatively write the sample example this way:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line dim'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Array&lt;Type>):
Array&lt;Type>' >loggingIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type[]'
>arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='interface Array&lt;T>' >Array</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&gt;:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Array&lt;T>' >Array</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in loggingIdentity&lt;Type>
(arg: Type[]): Type[]' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt; {</span>
</div> <div class='line highlight'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type[]' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:

```

```
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Array<Type>.length: number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);
</span> <span style="color: #008000">>// Array has a .length, so no more error</span> </div>
<div class='line dim'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type[]' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line dim'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABAGzgczMtMaCSATAUzFigE8AeAFV
</div> </pre>
```

You may already be familiar with this style of type from other languages. In the next section, we'll cover how you can create your own generic types like `Array<Type>`.

## Generic Types

In previous sections, we created generic identity functions that worked over a range of types. In this section, we'll explore the type of the functions themselves and how to create generic interfaces.

The type of generic functions is just like those of non-generic functions, with the type parameters listed first, similarly to function declarations:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
identity<Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity<Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type'
>arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity<Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity<Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='let myIdentity: &lt;Type>
(arg: Type) => Type' >myIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: &lt;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in &lt;Type>(arg: Type):
Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
```

```
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in &lt;Type>(arg: Type):
Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFAFWwAc0A+ACg
</div> </pre>
```

We could also have used a different name for the generic type parameter in the type, so long as the number of type variables and how the type variables are used line up.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type'
>arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='let myIdentity: &lt;Input>
(arg: Input) => Input' >myIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: &lt;
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Input in &lt;Input>
(arg: Input): Input' >Input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Input' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter)
Input in &lt;Input>(arg: Input): Input' >Input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">) </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Input in &lt;Input>
(arg: Input): Input' >Input</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type'
>identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFAFWwAc0A+ACg
</div> </pre>
```

We can also write the generic type as a call signature of an object literal type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type'
>arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let myIdentity: &lt;Type>
(arg: Type) => Type' >myIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: { &lt;
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in &lt;Type>
(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter)
Type in &lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> } =
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type):
Type' >identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABDAJgUzLKBPAFAFWwAc0A+ACg
</div> </pre>
```

Which leads us to writing our first generic interface. Let's take the object literal from the previous example and move it to an interface:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
GenericIdentityFn' >GenericIdentityFn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in &lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
```

```

<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in &lt;Type>(arg: Type):
Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in &lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&gt;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type'
>arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"></span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}<
span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let myIdentity:
GenericIdentityFn' >myIdentity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface GenericIdentityFn'
>GenericIdentityFn</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type'
>identity</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgOIRNYCCSATDMYMATwDERI
</div></pre>

```

In a similar example, we may want to move the generic parameter to be a parameter of the whole interface. This lets us see what type(s) we're generic over (e.g. `Dictionary<string>` rather than just `Dictionary`). This makes the type parameter visible to all the other members of the interface.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
GenericIdentityFn&lt;Type>' >GenericIdentityFn</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
GenericIdentityFn&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
GenericIdentityFn&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">):</span>

```

```

</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
GenericIdentityFn&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type):
Type' >identity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type):
Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let myIdentity: GenericIdentityFn&lt;number>'
>myIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface GenericIdentityFn&lt;Type>' >GenericIdentityFn</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; = </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='function identity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >identity</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgOIRNYCCSATDMYMATwDEQ
</div> </pre>

```

Notice that our example has changed to be something slightly different. Instead of describing a generic function, we now have a non-generic function signature that is a part of a generic type. When we use `GenericIdentityFn`, we now will also need to specify the corresponding type argument (here: `number`), effectively locking in what the underlying call signature will use. Understanding when to put the type parameter directly on the call signature and when to put it on the interface itself will be helpful in describing what aspects of a type are generic.

In addition to generic interfaces, we can also create generic classes. Note that it is not possible to create generic enums and namespaces.

## Generic Classes

A generic class has a similar shape to a generic interface. Generic classes have a generic type parameter list in angle brackets ( `<>` ) following the name of the class.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
GenericNumber&lt;NumType'> >GenericNumber</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) NumType
in GenericNumber&lt;NumType'> >NumType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&gt; {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) GenericNumber&lt;NumType>.zeroValue:
NumType'> >zeroValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) NumType in
GenericNumber&lt;NumType'> >NumType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) GenericNumber&lt;NumType>.add: (x:
NumType, y: NumType) => NumType'> >add</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: NumType'> >x</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) NumType in GenericNumber&lt;NumType'> >NumType</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) y: NumType'> >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) NumType in
GenericNumber&lt;NumType'> >NumType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) NumType in
GenericNumber&lt;NumType'> >NumType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let myGenericNumber:
GenericNumber&lt;number'> >myGenericNumber</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">=</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor
GenericNumber&lt;number'>()</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> GenericNumber</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let myGenericNumber:
GenericNumber&lt;number'> >myGenericNumber</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
GenericNumber&lt;number>.zeroValue: number'> >zeroValue</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">=</span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let
myGenericNumber: GenericNumber&lt;number'> >myGenericNumber</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
GenericNumber&lt;number>.add: (x: number, y: number) => number'> >add</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">=</span> <span style="color:

```

```
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ( </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: number'
>y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x:
number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEgCBcCcEsDG0BcoBmBDANpApgFCLaaSSgDieAC3yF4AIKAC8YjU50BfAgWw8aFAWfipaeh4OWHdQWgB3Sho6JCiualZokWNnHVDwIMZMugA6OVglFTxY
</div> </pre>
```

This is a pretty literal use of the `GenericNumber` class, but you may have noticed that nothing is restricting it to only use the `number` type. We could have instead used `string` or even more complex objects.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">let</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let stringNumeric:
GenericNumber&lt;string>' >stringNumeric</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor
GenericNumber&lt;string>(): GenericNumber&lt;string>' >GenericNumber</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &gt;>();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let stringNumeric: GenericNumber&lt;string>'
>stringNumeric</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) GenericNumber&lt;string>.zeroValue: string'
>zeroValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> ""</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let stringNumeric: GenericNumber&lt;string>'
>stringNumeric</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) GenericNumber&lt;string>.add: (x: string, y: string) =>
string' >add</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ( </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: string'
>y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x:
string' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color:
```



```
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: string' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">>;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let
stringNumeric: GenericNumber<string>' >stringNumeric</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
GenericNumber<string>.add: (x: string, y: string) => string' >add</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let stringNumeric:
GenericNumber<string>' >stringNumeric</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
GenericNumber<string>.zeroValue: string' >zeroValue</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "test"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">));</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEGcBcCcEsDG0BcoBmBDANpApgFCLaaSSgDieA
C3yF4AIKAC8YjU50BfAiFAAWmDEJmhgwIJsPGhQGARqAHMeOiR3UFoAd0oaVMZWdIhOePgkkWNnHR
</div> </pre>
```

Just as with interface, putting the type parameter on the class itself lets us make sure all of the properties of the class are working with the same type.

As we cover in [our section on classes](#), a class has two sides to its type: the static side and the instance side. Generic classes are only generic over their instance side rather than their static side, so when working with classes, static members can not use the class's type parameter.

## Generic Constraints

If you remember from an earlier example, you may sometimes want to write a generic function that works on a set of types where you have *some* knowledge about what capabilities that set of types will have. In our `loggingIdentity` example, we wanted to be able to access the `.length` property of `arg`, but the compiler could not prove that every type had a `.length` property, so it warns us that we can't make this assumption.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
loggingIdentity<Type>(arg: Type): Type' >loggingIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in loggingIdentity<Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
```

```

loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
loggingIdentity&lt;Type>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp
lsp='any' >length</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div><span class="error"><span>Property 'length' does not exist on type 'Type'.</span><span
class="code">2339</span></span><span class="error-behind">Property 'length' does not exist
on type 'Type'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type' >arg</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQAzAVwDsBjAFw
</div></pre>

```

Instead of working with any and all types, we'd like to constrain this function to work with any and all types that *also* have the `.length` property. As long as the type has this member, we'll allow it, but it's required to have at least this member. To do so, we must list our requirement as a constraint on what `Type` can be.

To do so, we'll create an interface that describes our constraint. Here, we'll create an interface that has a single `.length` property and then we'll use this interface and the `extends` keyword to denote our constraint:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Lengthwise' >Lengthwise</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='(property) Lengthwise.length: number' >length</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function loggingIdentity&lt;Type
extends Lengthwise>(arg: Type): Type' >loggingIdentity</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
loggingIdentity&lt;Type extends Lengthwise>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface

```

```

Lengthwise' > Lengthwise</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;( </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type extends Lengthwise' >arg</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in loggingIdentity&lt;Type extends Lengthwise>(arg: Type): Type'
>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in loggingIdentity&lt;Type extends
Lengthwise>(arg: Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
{ </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type extends Lengthwise' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Lengthwise.length: number' >length</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">); </span>
<span style="color: #008000"> // Now we know it has a .length property, so no more error</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) arg: Type extends Lengthwise' >arg</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgDIRAczACwO7ADOKA3gFDL
2kKyBJMJxGgA6KhlHZ1CrHHcuZAB6eOQAOXE8ZDwUAGsQNORgMGQcOAs4ZCisXGQ9KHEDKA0AGmI
</div> </pre>

```

Because the generic function is now constrained, it will no longer work over any and all types:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function loggingIdentity&lt;Lengthwise>(arg: Lengthwise): Lengthwise'
>loggingIdentity</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">( </span> <span style="color:
#098658"> <data-err>3</data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div>
<span class="error"> <span>Argument of type 'number' is not assignable to parameter of type
'Lengthwise'.</span> <span class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Argument of type 'number' is not assignable to parameter of type 'Lengthwise'.</span>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAJYB2ALjAGYC
zYYpUFoSBJJah1w5iVVEFAAWibqSRImhrxsoxMLKwJbElwioA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

Instead, we need to pass in values whose type has all the required properties:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function loggingIdentity&lt;{&#13; length: number;&#13; value:
number;&#13;}>(arg: {&#13; length: number;&#13; value: number;&#13;}):

```

```
{&#13; length: number;&#13; value: number;&#13;}' >loggingIdentity</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">({ </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) length: number' >length</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #098658"> 10</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) value: number' >value</data-lsp>:
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 3</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> });</span></div></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgDIRAczACwO7ADOKA3gFDL
2kKyBJMJxGgA6KhHZ1CrHHceSiglMGYoKSdMHn4AekzkAFp8hGYwfNyyMNI5ZVVgDXsSamjGAEYABgA.
</div></pre>
```

## Using Type Parameters in Generic Constraints

You can declare a type parameter that is constrained by another type parameter. For example, here we'd like to get a property from an object given its name. We'd like to ensure that we're not accidentally grabbing a property that does not exist on the `obj`, so we'll place a constraint between the two types:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
getProperty&#13;Type, Key extends keyof Type>(obj: Type, key: Key): Type[Key]'
>getProperty</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in getProperty&#13;Type, Key extends keyof
Type>(obj: Type, key: Key): Type[Key]' >Type</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">,
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Key in
getProperty&#13;Type, Key extends keyof Type>(obj: Type, key: Key): Type[Key]' >Key</data-
lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">keyof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in getProperty&#13;Type, Key extends keyof Type>(obj:
Type, key: Key): Type[Key]' >Type</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type' >obj</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in getProperty&#13;Type, Key extends keyof Type>(obj: Type, key: Key):
Type[Key]' >Type</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) key: Key extends keyof Type' >key</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Key in getProperty&#13;Type, Key extends keyof Type>(obj: Type, key: Key):
Type[Key]' >Key</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
```

```
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">[</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) key: Key extends
keyof Type' >key</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let x: {&#13; a: number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13;
d: number;&#13;}' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = { </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) a: number' >a</data-lsp>:</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">1</span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) b: number'
>b</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) c: number' >c</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) d: number' >d</data-lsp>:</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">4</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> };</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function getProperty&#13; a: number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c:
number;&#13; d: number;&#13;}, &quot;a&quot;>(obj: {&#13; a:
number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13; d: number;&#13;}, key:
&quot;a&quot;): number' >getProperty</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: {&#13; a:
number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13; d: number;&#13;}' >x</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"a"</span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='function getProperty&#13; a: number;&#13; b:
number;&#13; c: number;&#13; d: number;&#13;}, &quot;a&quot; |
&quot;b&quot; | &quot;c&quot; | &quot;d&quot;>(obj: {&#13; a:
number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13; d: number;&#13;}, key:
&quot;a&quot; | &quot;b&quot; | &quot;c&quot; |
&quot;d&quot;): number' >getProperty</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let x: {&#13; a:
number;&#13; b: number;&#13; c: number;&#13; d: number;&#13;}' >x</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #A31515"><data-
err>&quot;m&quot;</data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>Argument of type ""m"" is not assignable to parameter of type ""a" | "b" | "c" |
"d".</span> <span class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Argument of
type ""m"" is not assignable to parameter of type ""a" | "b" | "c" | "d".</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAGYCuAdgMY,
</div> </pre>
```

# Using Class Types in Generics

When creating factories in TypeScript using generics, it is necessary to refer to class types by their constructor functions. For example,

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function create&lt;Type>(c: {&lt;#13; new (): Type;&lt;#13;}): Type' >create</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in create&lt;Type>(c: new () => Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) c: new () => Type' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: {</span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> ():</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in create&lt;Type>(c: new () => Type): Type' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) c: new () => Type' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABBATgUwIZTQHgCoCeADmgHwAI'></div></pre>
```

A more advanced example uses the prototype property to infer and constrain relationships between the constructor function and the instance side of class types.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class BeeKeeper' >BeeKeeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BeeKeeper.hasMask: boolean' >hasMask</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">true</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class ZooKeeper' >ZooKeeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) ZooKeeper.nametag: string'>
```

```

>nametag</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Mikle"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class Animal' >Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Animal.numLegs: number' >numLegs</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">4</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Bee' >Bee</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Animal'
>Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Bee.keeper: BeeKeeper' >keeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class BeeKeeper' >BeeKeeper</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor
BeeKeeper(): BeeKeeper' >BeeKeeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Lion' >Lion</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Animal'
>Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Lion.keeper: ZooKeeper' >keeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class ZooKeeper' >ZooKeeper</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor
ZooKeeper(): ZooKeeper' >ZooKeeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function createInstance&lt;A extends
Animal>(c: new () => A): A' >createInstance</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) A in
createInstance&lt;A extends Animal>(c: new () => A): A' >A</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Animal'
>Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span style="color:

```

```

#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) c: new () => A' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">new</span><span style="color: #000000">
() </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) A in createInstance&lt;A
extends Animal>(c: new () => A): A' >A</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">):
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) A in
createInstance&lt;A extends Animal>(c: new () => A): A' >A</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) c: new () => A' >c</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">());</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}<
span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
createInstance&lt;Lion>(c: new () => Lion): Lion' >createInstance</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='class Lion'
>Lion</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">).</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Lion.keeper: ZooKeeper' >keeper</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
ZooKeeper.nametag: string' >nametag</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
createInstance&lt;Bee>(c: new () => Bee): Bee' >createInstance</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='class Bee'
>Bee</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">).</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Bee.keeper: BeeKeeper' >keeper</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) BeeKeeper.hasMask:
boolean' >hasMask</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEgCBcCcEsDG0BcoBmBDANpApgFCLaaSSgBCet
iM0F8VndolpYDJ9qBEKNxrd7ngni9LnglIMZiMAHRrExkizWWx2NQ4zCPZ62QIDNrkyIMMncSB8SD8FRA
</div></pre>

```

This pattern is used to power the [mixins](#) design pattern.



# Keyof Type Operator

## The `keyof` type operator

The `keyof` operator takes an object type and produces a string or numeric literal union of its keys:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Point = {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >Point</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">};</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type P = keyof Point' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>P</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Point = {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >Point</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type P = keyof Point</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACg9gSwHbCgXigbygDwFxFxRICuAtgEYQB'></div></pre>
```

If the type has a `string` or `number` index signature, `keyof` will return those types instead:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Arrayish = {&#13; [n: number]: unknown;&#13;}' >Arrayish</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number' >n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]; </span><span style="color: #267F99">unknown</span><span style="color: #000000">};</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type A = number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>A</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
```

```

<data-lsp lsp='type Arrayish = {&#13; [n: number]: unknown;&#13;}' >Arrayish</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'>
</span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type A = number</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Mapish = {&#13; [k: string]:
boolean;&#13;}' >Mapish</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = { [ </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) k: string' >k</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">]: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> };</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type M = string | number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>M</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
Mapish = {&#13; [k: string]: boolean;&#13;}' >Mapish</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type M = string | number</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAGgTnAhiAlgZwBZQLxQN5QDaAdgFxTEC
MNHhoAWURgVkgoTbk0wOCmlBzZIFqdOAGwil+Qw+LGktKyCqbmM0qaOrpAA'>Try</a> </div>
</pre>

```

Note that in this example, `M is string | number` -- this is because JavaScript object keys are always coerced to a string, so `obj[0]` is always the same as `obj["0"]`.

`keyof` types become especially useful when combined with mapped types, which we'll learn more about later.

# Typeof Type Operator

## The `typeof` type operator

JavaScript already has a `typeof` operator you can use in an *expression* context:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Prints "string"</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello world"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAUCCesDsBcDOoBEj41gcxQKAMYD2sihANgKYB0'></div></pre>
```

TypeScript adds a `typeof` operator you can use in a *type* context to refer to the *type* of a variable or property:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let s: string'>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let n: string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let s: string'>s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>let n: string</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/DYUwLgBAzhC8ECIAWJjAPYINwChSQDsAuCMATwAc'></div></pre>
```

This isn't very useful for basic types, but combined with other type operators, you can use `typeof` to conveniently express many patterns. For an example, let's start by looking at the predefined type `ReturnType<T>`. It takes a *function type* and produces its return type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span></div></pre>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
Predicate = (x: unknown) => boolean' >Predicate</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: unknown'
>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">unknown</span> <span style="color: #000000">) </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type K = boolean' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>K</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type ReturnType&lt;T extends (...args: any) => any' >T extends
(...args: any) => infer R ? R : any' >ReturnType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Predicate = (x:
unknown) => boolean' >Predicate</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;<
</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> type K = boolean</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACgThAJgSwMYENjQLxQBQAeAXFAK4B2
</div> </pre>

```

If we try to use `ReturnType` on a function name, we see an instructive error:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function f():
{&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}' >f</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number' >x</data-lsp>:</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">10</span> <span style="color:
#000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number'
>y</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type P = any' >P</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type ReturnType&lt;T extends (...args: any) =>
any' >T extends (...args: any) => infer R ? R : any' >ReturnType</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='any'
>f</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>'f' refers to a value, but is being used as a type here. Did you mean 'typeof f'?
</span> <span class="code">2749</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">'f' refers to a
value, but is being used as a type here. Did you mean 'typeof f'?</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'

```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwHYAsBOAUAGYCuAdgMY#</div></pre>

Remember that *values* and *types* aren't the same thing. To refer to the *type* that the *value* *f* has, we use `typeof` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function f(): {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}'>f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) y: number'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type P = {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}'>P</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ReturnType&#13;T extends (...args: any) => any => T extends (...args: any) => infer R ? R : any'>ReturnType</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='function f(): {&#13; x: number;&#13; y: number;&#13;}'>f</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type P = { x: number; y: number; }</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/GYVwdgxgLglg9mABMAFASkQbwFCMQJwFMoR8INE</div></pre>
```

## Limitations

TypeScript intentionally limits the sorts of expressions you can use `typeof` on.

Specifically, it's only legal to use `typeof` on identifiers (i.e. variable names) or their properties. This helps avoid the confusing trap of writing code you think is executing, but isn't:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Meant to use = ReturnType&#13;typeof msgbox&#13;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let shouldContinue: () => boolean'>shouldContinue</data-lsp></span><span>
```

```
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const msgbox: ()
=> boolean' >msgbox</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> <data-err>(</data-err>
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Are you sure you want to continue?"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>' , ' expected.</span> <span
class="code">1005</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">' , ' expected.</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFyglwAYMFYBQATSAYwBsBDaSU
KmazUAB3WScXGkdC4oB+GoE5IA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

# Indexed Access Types

We can use an *indexed access type* to look up a specific property on another type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}'>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number'>age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) alive: boolean'>alive</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Age = number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}'>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #A31515">"age"</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Age = number</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACHBOBnA9gOygXigbygQwHMIAuKVAVv'></div></pre>
```

The indexing type is itself a type, so we can use unions, `keyof`, or other types entirely:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type I1 = string | number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>I1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}'>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #A31515">"age"</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #A31515">"name"</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type I1 = string | number</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type I2 = string | number |</div></code></pre>
```

```

boolean' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>l2</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13;
age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}' >Person</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}'
>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span
class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type l2 =
string | number | boolean</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
AliveOrName = &quot;name&quot; | &quot;alive&quot;'
>AliveOrName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"alive"</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"name"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type l3 = string | boolean' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>l3</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name:
string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}' >Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">[</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type AliveOrName =
&quot;name&quot; | &quot;alive&quot;' >AliveOrName</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type l3 = string | boolean</span></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACHBOBnA9gOygXigbygQwHMIAuKVAVv
</div></pre>

```

You'll even see an error if you try to index a property that doesn't exist:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type l1 =
any' >l1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name:
string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}' >Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">[</span><span style="color: #A31515"><data-err>&quot;alve&quot;</data-err>
</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class="error"><span>Property
'alve' does not exist on type 'Person'.</span><span class="code">2339</span></span><span
class="error-behind">Property 'alve' does not exist on type 'Person'.</span></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQAXATwAdJQAFc
</div></pre>

```



Another example of indexing with an arbitrary type is using `number` to get the type of an array's elements. We can combine this with `typeof` to conveniently capture the element type of an array literal:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const MyArray: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}&#13;'>MyArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = [</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string'>name</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Alice"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number'>age</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">15</span><span style="color: #000000"> }, </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string'>name</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Bob"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number'>age</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">23</span><span style="color: #000000"> }, </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string'>name</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Eve"</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number'>age</data-lsp>:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658">38</span><span style="color: #000000"> }, </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person = {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}'>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const MyArray: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}&#13;'>MyArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #001080">number</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Person = { name: string; age: number; }</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Age = number'>Age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const MyArray: {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}&#13;'>MyArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #001080">number</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span><span style="color: #A31515">"age"</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span>
```

```

class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Age = number</span> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">// Or</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type Age2 = number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Age2</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='type Person = {&#13; name: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}' >Person</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color: #A31515">"age"
</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span>
<span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Age2 = number</span></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLgBAsgTwIICcUEMEwLwwNoBQMMA3jGO
</div></pre>

```

You can only use types when indexing, meaning you can't use a `const` to make a variable reference:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const key:
&quot;age&quot;'>key</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"age"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Age = any' >Age</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Person =
{&#13; age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}'
>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >key</data-lsp></data-err></span><span
style="color: #000000">];</span></div><span class="error"><span>Type 'any' cannot be used
as an index type.</br>'key' refers to a value, but is being used as a type here. Did you mean 'typeof
key'?</span><span class="code">2538<br/>2749</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Type 'any' cannot be used as an index type.</br>'key' refers to a value, but is being used
as a type here. Did you mean 'typeof key'?</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMAOdB2AFgE4AoAFw
WbwA2agG5KJcODSi82AX2mkQoALSOAXiPKP7pJ6xWgA1pEoOUAAiAUhgmyypaUABBQSDGJFYAbX9KAI
</div></pre>

```

However, you can use a type alias for a similar style of refactor:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type key =
&quot;age&quot;'>key</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"age"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>

```

```
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Age = number' >Age</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
Person = {&#13; age: number;&#13; name: string;&#13; alive: boolean;&#13;}'
>Person</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type key = &quot;age&quot;' >key</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">];</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACHBOBnA9gOygXigbygQwHMIuKVAVv
</div></pre>
```

# Conditional Types

At the heart of most useful programs, we have to make decisions based on input. JavaScript programs are no different, but given the fact that values can be easily introspected, those decisions are also based on the types of the inputs. *Conditional types* help describe the relation between the types of inputs and outputs.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Animal' >Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Animal.live(): void' >live</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">():</span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Animal' >Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Dog woof(): void' >woof</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">():</span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Example1 = number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Example1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Animal' >Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ? </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> : </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Example1 = number</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Example2 = string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Example2</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface RegExp' >RegExp</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Animal' >Animal</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span></div></code></div></pre>
```

```
#000000"> ? </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> type Example2 = string</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgllmAWzgG2QbwChlkdgA3CA/
QiMzS2tbewAmF2QAJQhRK1MJaQhZBXRfPECQ8Mjo2PiklJIMoA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

Conditional types take a form that looks a little like conditional expressions ( `condition ? trueExpression : falseExpression` ) in JavaScript:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='type SomeType = any' >SomeType</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">extends</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='type OtherType =
any' >OtherType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ? </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='type TrueType = any' >TrueType</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='type FalseType =
any' >FalseType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAyg9gWwgFXNAvFAhgOxAbgChRloB5YA/
</div> </pre>
```

When the type on the left of the `extends` is assignable to the one on the right, then you'll get the type in the first branch (the "true" branch); otherwise you'll get the type in the latter branch (the "false" branch).

From the examples above, conditional types might not immediately seem useful - we can tell ourselves whether or not `Dog extends Animal` and pick `number` or `string`! But the power of conditional types comes from using them with generics.

For example, let's take the following `createLabel` function:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
IdLabel' >IdLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) IdLabel.id: number' >id</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #008000"> /* some fields */</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface NameLabel' >NameLabel</data-lsp> </span>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) NameLabel.name: string'
>name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#008000"> /* other fields */</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function createLabel(id: number): IdLabel (+2 overloads)'
>createLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) id: number' >id</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface IdLabel'
>IdLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function createLabel(name: string): NameLabel (+2
overloads)' >createLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
NameLabel' >NameLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function createLabel(nameOrId: string |
number): IdLabel | NameLabel (+2 overloads)' >createLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
nameOrId: string | number' >nameOrId</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface IdLabel' >IdLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
NameLabel' >NameLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function createLabel(id: number): IdLabel
(+2 overloads)' >createLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) nameOrId: string | number'
>nameOrId</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface IdLabel' >IdLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface NameLabel'
>NameLabel</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">throw</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"unimplemented"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div

```

```
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgJIBMAycBGEA2yA3gFDLLDoI
Ck3Dy8fPwCgiETQ3X4DI1M45FV1XAJk909vX39A4PL8XL0AeSgMAuMQMwAfWkZmYoTG5D7S7MbK1J
</div></pre>
```

These overloads for `createLabel` describe a single JavaScript function that makes a choice based on the types of its inputs. Note a few things:

1. If a library has to make the same sort of choice over and over throughout its API, this becomes cumbersome.
2. We have to create three overloads: one for each case when we're *sure* of the type (one for `string` and one for `number`), and one for the most general case (taking a `string | number`). For every new type `createLabel` can handle, the number of overloads grows exponentially.

Instead, we can encode that logic in a conditional type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
NameOrId&lt;T extends string | number> = T extends number ? IdLabel : NameLabel'
>NameOrId</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type NameOrId&lt;T extends string |
number>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> &gt; = </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type NameOrId&lt;T extends string |
number>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> ? </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface IdLabel'>IdLabel</data-lsp></span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> : </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='interface NameLabel'>NameLabel</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgJIBMAycBGEA2yA3gFDLLDoI
</div></pre>
```

We can then use that conditional type to simplify out overloads down to a single function with no overloads.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
```

```

createLabel&lt;T extends string | number>(idOrName: T): NameOrId&lt;T>'
>createLabel</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in createLabel&lt;T extends string | number>
(idOrName: T): NameOrId&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) idOrName: T extends string | number'
>idOrName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in createLabel&lt;T extends string | number>
(idOrName: T): NameOrId&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">):
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type NameOrId&lt;T extends string |
number> = T extends number ? IdLabel : NameLabel'>NameOrId</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) T in createLabel&lt;T extends string | number>(idOrName: T):
NameOrId&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">throw</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"unimplemented"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let a: NameLabel' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>a</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
createLabel&lt;&quot;typescript&quot;>(idOrName:
&quot;typescript&quot;): NameLabel'>createLabel</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"typescript"</span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>let a: NameLabel</span> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='let b: IdLabel' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>b</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='function createLabel&lt;2.8>(idOrName: 2.8): IdLabel'>createLabel</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #098658">2.8</span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>let b: IdLabel</span> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='let c: IdLabel | NameLabel'>c</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
createLabel&lt;&quot;hello&quot; | 42>(idOrName: &quot;hello&quot; |
42): IdLabel | NameLabel'>createLabel</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Math: Math'>Math</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Math.random(): number'>random</data-lsp></span><span style="color:

```



```
#000000">() ? </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #098658">42</span> <span style="color: #000000">);
</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> let c: NameLabel | IdLabel</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/JYOWLgpgTgZghgYwgAgJIBMAycBGEA2yA3gFDLLDoI
OAQ6A-
OJCTvMDIODpEZjCYQKb4TYPNyeLijYDuMAPA71RrIAB6RX+gOQOFBo3Gk1qmwATAA6AAcaJIDXI2NxEC
</div> </pre>
```

## Conditional Type Constraints

Often, the checks in a conditional type will provide us with some new information. Just like with narrowing with type guards can give us a more specific type, the true branch of a conditional type will further constraint generics by the type we check against.

For example, let's take the following:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
MessageOf&lt;T> = T[&quot;message&quot;]' >MessageOf</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) T in type MessageOf&lt;T>' >T</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt; = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in
type MessageOf&lt;T>' >T</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> [ </span>
<span style="color: #A31515"> "message" </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ]; </span>
</div> <span class="error"> <span>Type ""message"" cannot be used to index type 'T'.</span>
<span class="code"> 2536</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Type ""message"" cannot
be used to index type 'T'.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYDMA2AUAC4CeADpKAI
</div> </pre>
```

In this example, TypeScript errors because `T` isn't known to have a property called `message`. We could constrain `T`, and TypeScript would no longer complain:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
MessageOf&lt;T extends { message: unknown; }> = T[&quot;message&quot;]'
>MessageOf</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type MessageOf&lt;T extends { message:
unknown; }>' >T</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> extends </span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) message: unknown' >message</data-lsp> </span> <span>
```

```

style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">unknown</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> }&gt; = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) T in type MessageOf&lt;T extends { message: unknown; }>' >T</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">[</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"message"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">];</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Email' >Email</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Email.message: string' >message</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Dog'
>Dog</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Dog.bark(): void' >bark</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(): </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type EmailMessageContents = string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;' >EmailMessageContents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type MessageOf&lt;T extends { message:
unknown; }>' >T[&quot;message&quot;]> MessageOf</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Email'
>Email</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span
class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type
EmailMessageContents = string</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAshDO8CGBzCB5AZgHgCpQgA9glA7AE3
</div> </pre>

```

However, what if we wanted `MessageOf` to take any type, and default to something like `never` if a `message` property isn't available? We can do this by moving the constraint out and introducing a conditional type:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
MessageOf&lt;T> = T extends {&#13; message: unknown;&#13;}&#13; ?
T[&quot;message&quot;] : never' >MessageOf</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type
MessageOf&lt;T>' >T</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; = </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type MessageOf&lt;T>'
>T</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:

```

```

#0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) message: unknown' >message</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">unknown</span><span
style="color: #000000"> } ? </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) T in type MessageOf&lt;T>' >T</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">[</span><span style="color: #A31515">"message"</span><span style="color:
#000000">] : </span><span style="color: #267F99">never</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Email' >Email</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Email.message: string' >message</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Dog.bark(): void' >bark</data-
lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">(): </span><span style="color:
#267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type EmailMessageContents = string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>EmailMessageContents</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type MessageOf&lt;T> = T extends {&#13;
message: unknown;&#13;} ? T[&quot;message&quot;] : never' >MessageOf</data-
lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='interface Email' >Email</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span>
</div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'>
</div>type EmailMessageContents = string</span> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type DogMessageContents = never' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>DogMessageContents</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type MessageOf&lt;T> = T extends {&#13;
message: unknown;&#13;} ? T[&quot;message&quot;] : never' >MessageOf</data-
lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type
DogMessageContents = never</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAshDO8CGBzCB5AZgHgCoD4oBeKXKCAI
</div></pre>

```

Within the true branch, TypeScript knows that `T` will have a `message` property.

As another example, we could also write a type called `Flatten` that flattens array types to their element types, but leaves them alone otherwise:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Flatten&lt;T> = T extends any[] ? T[number] : T'>Flatten</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type Flatten&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type Flatten&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000"> [] ? </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type Flatten&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> ] : </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in type Flatten&lt;T>'>T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> ;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Extracts out the element type.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Str = string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Str</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Flatten&lt;T> = T extends any[] ? T[number] : T'>Flatten</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> []&gt;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Str = string</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Leaves the type alone.</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Num = number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Flatten&lt;T> = T extends any[] ? T[number] : T'>Flatten</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type Num = number</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYgNgQ2MCA7APAFQHxQLxSZQQAeKqA'></div></pre>
```

When `Flatten` is given an array type, it uses an indexed access with `number` to fetch out `string[]`'s element type. Otherwise, it just returns the type it was given.

## Inferring Within Conditional Types

We just found ourselves using conditional types to apply constraints and then extract out types. This ends up being such a common operation that conditional types make it easier.

Conditional types provide us with a way to infer from types we compare against in the true branch using the `infer` keyword. For example, we could have inferred the element type in `Flatten` instead of fetching it out "manually" with an indexed access type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Flatten&lt;Type> = Type extends (infer Item)[] ? Item : Type'>Flatten</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type Flatten&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type Flatten&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Array&lt;T>'>Array</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #0000FF">infer</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Item'>Item</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; ? </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Item'>Item</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> : </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type Flatten&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAYgNgQ2MCA7APAFXBafFAXim0iggA8VL'></div></pre>
```

Here, we used the `infer` keyword to declaratively introduce a new generic type variable named `Item` instead of specifying how to retrieve the element type of `T` within the true branch. This frees us from having to think about how to dig through and probing apart the structure of the types we're interested in.

We can write some useful helper type aliases using the `infer` keyword. For example, for simple cases, we can extract the return type out from function types:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type GetReturnType&lt;Type> = Type extends (...args: never[]) => infer Return ? Return : never'>GetReturnType</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type GetReturnType&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type GetReturnType&lt;Type>'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span></div></code></pre>
```

```

<span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (...</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) args: never[]' >args</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">never</span> <span
style="color: #000000">[<span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">infer</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Return'
>Return</data-lsp> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> ? </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Return' >Return</data-lsp>
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> : </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">never</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Num = number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>Num</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type GetReturnType&lt;Type> = Type extends (...args:
never[]) => infer Return ? Return : never' >GetReturnType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;() </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'>
<div class='arrow'> </div> type Num = number</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type Str = string' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>Str</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type GetReturnType&lt;Type> = Type extends (...args: never[]) => infer Return ? Return :
never' >GetReturnType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: string' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type Str = string</span> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Bools = boolean[]' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>Bools</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type GetReturnType&lt;Type> = Type extends (...args:
never[]) => infer Return ? Return : never' >GetReturnType</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt;(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) a: boolean'
>a</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) b: boolean' >b</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">[<span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span>
</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div

```

```
class='arrow'></div>type Bools = boolean[]</span></code><a class='playground-link'  
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpggBA4hwCV4FcBOA7AKuCAebkAfFALxQHQC  
</div></pre>
```

When inferring from a type with multiple call signatures (such as the type of an overloaded function), inferences are made from the *last* signature (which, presumably, is the most permissive catch-all case). It is not possible to perform overload resolution based on a list of argument types.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div  
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">declare</span>  
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span  
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function  
stringOrNum(x: string): number (+2 overloads)'>stringOrNum</data-lsp></span><span  
style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x:  
string'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:  
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">); </span><span style="color:  
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>  
<span style="color: #0000FF">declare</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span  
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span  
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function stringOrNum(x: number): string (+2 overloads)'  
>stringOrNum</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color:  
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:  
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color:  
#000000">); </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:  
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">declare</span>  
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span  
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function  
stringOrNum(x: string | number): string | number (+2 overloads)'>stringOrNum</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp  
lsp='(parameter) x: string | number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:  
</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span>  
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">); </span><span  
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span  
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div  
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>  
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type T1 = string | number' style='border-bottom:  
solid 2px lightgrey;'>T1</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span  
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ReturnType&lt;T extends (...args: any) => any =  
T extends (...args: any) => infer R ? R : any'>ReturnType</data-lsp></span><span style="color:  
#000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span style="color:  
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='function stringOrNum(x:  
string): number (+2 overloads)'>stringOrNum</data-lsp></span><span style="color:  
#000000"> &gt;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'>  
<div class='arrow'></div>type T1 = string | number</span></code><a class='playground-link'
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEAzArgOzAFwJYHtXwGcMYtUBzAeRq  
</div></pre>

## Distributive Conditional Types

When conditional types act on a generic type, they become *distributive* when given a union type. For example, take the following:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ToArray&lt;Type> = Type extends any ? Type[] : never' >ToArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArray&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArray&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000"> ? </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArray&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] : </span><span style="color: #267F99">never</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpggBAKg9gQQE5IIYgDw3BAfFAXlhyggA9glA7A</div></pre>
```

If we plug a union type into `ToArray`, then the conditional type will be applied to each member of that union.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ToArray&lt;Type> = Type extends any ? Type[] : never' >ToArray</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArray&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArray&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000"> ? </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArray&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">[] : </span><span style="color: #267F99">never</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type StrArrOrNumArr = string[] | number[]' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>StrArrOrNumArr</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span>
```



```

style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type ToArray&lt;Type> = Type extends any ? Type[] :
never' >ToArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt; </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;; </span> </div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>type
StrArrOrNumArr = string[] | number[] </span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAKg9gQQE5IIYgDw3BAfFAXIhyggA9glA7A
</div> </pre>

```

What happens here is that `StrOrNumArray` distributes on:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #001080">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> >; </span> </div> </code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAysBOBBe8Dy8ByBXAts+UAvAFBRQD05l
</div> </pre>

```

and maps over each member type of the union, to what is effectively:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='type ToArray&lt;Type> = Type extends any ? Type[] :
never' >ToArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt; </span> <span
style="color: #001080">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; | </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='type ToArray&lt;Type> = Type extends any ? Type[] :
never' >ToArray</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt; </span> <span
style="color: #001080">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;; </span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAKg9gQQE5IIYgDw3BAfFAXIhyggA9glA7A
</div> </pre>

```

which leaves us with:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> [] | </span> <span
style="color: #001080">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> [] </span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAysBOBBe8Dy8ByBXAts+UAvAFBRQD05l
</div> </pre>

```

Typically, distributivity is the desired behavior. To avoid that behavior, you can surround each side of the `extends` keyword with square brackets.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
ToArrayNonDist&lt;Type> = [Type] extends [any] ? Type[] : never' >ToArrayNonDist</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArrayNonDist&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &gt; = [</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in type ToArrayNonDist&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> ] </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> extends</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> any</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> ] ? </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
type ToArrayNonDist&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> [] :
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> never</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // &apos;StrOrNumArr&apos; is no
longer a union.</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
StrOrNumArr = (string | number)[]' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'> StrOrNumArr</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type ToArrayNonDist&lt;Type> = [Type] extends [any]
? Type[] : never' >ToArrayNonDist</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type
StrOrNumArr = (string | number)[]</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpggBAKg9gQQE5IIYgHJwHYBECWAzsADwzgQ
</div> </pre>

```

# Mapped Types

When you don't want to repeat yourself, sometimes a type needs to be based on another type.

Mapped types build on the syntax for index signatures, which are used to declare the types of properties which has not been declared ahead of time:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OnlyBoolsAndHorses = {&#13; [key: string]: boolean | Horse;&#13;}'>OnlyBoolsAndHorses</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) key: string'>key</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">]: </span><span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Horse = {}'>Horse</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">};</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const conforms: OnlyBoolsAndHorses'>conforms</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OnlyBoolsAndHorses = {&#13; [key: string]: boolean | Horse;&#13;}'>OnlyBoolsAndHorses</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) del: true'>del</data-lsp>: </span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">true</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) rodney: false'>rodney</data-lsp>: </span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">>false</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">};</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAEg9gJwM7QLxQN4F8DcAoAegKgFoyBj/'></div></pre>
```

A mapped type is a generic type which uses a union created [via a keyof](#) to iterate through the keys of one type to create another:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type OptionsFlags&#13;Type'>OptionsFlags</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
```

```

lsp='(type parameter) Type in type OptionsFlags&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">&gt; = {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
[</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property'
>Property</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">in</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">keyof</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type OptionsFlags&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">]: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBA8mwEsD2A7AzgMQDYEMDmaAPACrgQ
</div> </pre>

```

In this example, `OptionFlags` will take all the properties from the type `Type` and change their values to be a boolean.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
FeatureFlags = {&#13; darkMode: () => void;&#13; newUserProfile: () =>
void;&#13;}' >FeatureFlags</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = {</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) darkMode: () => void' >darkMode</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: () </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) newUserProfile: () => void'
>newUserProfile</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: () </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type FeatureOptions = {&#13; darkMode: boolean;&#13; newUserProfile:
boolean;&#13;}' >FeatureOptions</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type OptionsFlags&lt;Type> = {
[Property in keyof Type]: boolean; }' >OptionsFlags</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type FeatureFlags =
{&#13; darkMode: () => void;&#13; newUserProfile: () => void;&#13;}'
>FeatureFlags</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span> </div> <span
class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type
FeatureOptions = { darkMode: boolean; newUserProfile: boolean; }</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'

```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpggBA8mwEsD2A7AzgMQDYEMDmaAPACrgQ  
</div></pre>

## Mapping Modifiers

There are two additional modifiers which can be applied during mapping: `readonly` and `?` which affect mutability and optionality respectively.

You can remove or add these modifiers by prefixing with `-` or `+`. If you don't add a prefix, then `+` is assumed.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Removes  
&apos;readonly&apos; attributes from a type&apos;s properties</span></div><div class='line'>  
<span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type CreateMutable&lt;Type> = { -readonly [Property  
in keyof Type]: Type[Property]; }' >CreateMutable</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:  
#000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in  
type CreateMutable&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;  
= {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> -</span><span style="color:  
#0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color:  
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span><span  
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">in</span><span style="color:  
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span><span style="color: #000000">  
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type  
CreateMutable&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">]:  
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type  
CreateMutable&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"></span>  
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp>  
</span><span style="color: #000000">];</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:  
#000000">};</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span  
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type  
LockedAccount = {&#13; readonly id: string;&#13; readonly name: string;&#13;}'  
>LockedAccount</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div  
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:  
#0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:  
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) id: string' >id</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:  
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:  
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span  
style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span  
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span><span  
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span  
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">};
```

```

</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type UnlockedAccount =
{&#13; id: string;&#13; name: string;&#13;}' >UnlockedAccount</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
CreateMutable&#13;Type> = { -readonly [Property in keyof Type]: Type[Property]; }'
>CreateMutable</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type LockedAccount = {&#13; readonly id:
string;&#13; readonly name: string;&#13;}' >LockedAccount</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type UnlockedAccount = { id: string; name: string; }
</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAECUFMFsHsDdIGdQHIBOkCGATWA7AGwE9VQsA)
E7U9NIIUABVljyC4tLyyrNFbGY1Cg0tbRz8yCKSsorDZJBrUAA9AH4gA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // Removes
&#13;optional&#13; attributes from a type&#13;s properties</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #0000FF"> type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Concrete&#13;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type]-?:
Type[Property]; }' >Concrete</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
Concrete&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; =
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> in</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> keyof</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
Concrete&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ]-?: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
Concrete&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ];</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> };</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> type</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type MaybeUser =
{&#13; id: string;&#13; name?: string | undefined;&#13; age?: number |
undefined;&#13;}' >MaybeUser</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) id: string' >id</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> string</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) name?: string | undefined' >name</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> : </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> string</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) age?: number | undefined'

```

```

>age</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type User = {&#13; id: string;&#13; name: string;&#13; age:
number;&#13;}' >User</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Concrete&#13;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type]-?:
Type[Property]; }' >Concrete</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&#13;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type MaybeUser = {&#13; id: string;&#13;
name?: string | undefined;&#13; age?: number | undefined;&#13;}' >MaybeUser</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&#13;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'>
</span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type User = { id: string; name: string;
age: number; }</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAECUFMFsHsDdIGdQHJYAcAuBLWA7AQwBtVRCssA
ALoBaAPwAXJ5alta23gDcEgC+0VJaoACyhDy0kACqSdb6Rib2ACbBSNQOAOBRpkTQkEGgJTT4FfmEZbX
</div></pre>

```

## Key Remapping via as

In TypeScript 4.1 and onwards, you can re-map keys in mapped types with an `as` clause in a mapped type:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class="language-id">ts</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">MappedTypeWithNewProperties</span><span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99">Type</span><span style="color: #000000"> &#13;</span>= {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color:
#267F99">Properties</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">in</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">keyof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">Type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99">NewKeyType</span><span style="color: #000000">]: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">Type</span><span style="color: #000000">[</span><span style="color:
#267F99">Properties</span><span style="color: #000000">]</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code></div></pre>

```

You can leverage features like [template literal types](#) to create new property names from prior ones:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type

```

```

Getters&lt;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type as `get${Capitalize&lt;string &amp;
Property>`]: () => Type[Property]; } >Getters</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
type Getters&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt; =
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">in</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
Getters&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">as</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">`get</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type Capitalize&lt;S extends string> = intrinsic' >Capitalize</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000FF">&lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000FF"> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">&</span> <span style="color: #000000FF"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000FF">&gt;</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">`</span> <span style="color: #000000">]</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type Getters&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">]</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Person' >Person</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.name: string'
>name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Person.age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Person.location: string' >location</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type LazyPerson = {&#13; getName: () =>
string;&#13; getAge: () => number;&#13; getLocation: () => string;&#13;}'
>LazyPerson</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Getters&lt;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type as
`get${Capitalize&lt;string &amp;
Property>`]: () => Type[Property]; }' >Getters</data-lsp>

```



```

lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='interface Person' >Person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span>
</div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'>
</div> type LazyPerson = { getName: () =&gt; string; getAge: () =&gt; number; getLocation: () =&gt;
string; }</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBA4hzAgJwM4B4Aq4lD4oF4oBvAKCnKgGf
</div> </pre>

```

You can filter out keys by producing `never` via a conditional type:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // Remove the
&apos;kind&apos; property</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type RemoveKindField&lt;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type as
Exclude&lt;Property, &quot;kind&quot;]: Type[Property]; }'
>RemoveKindField</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
RemoveKindField&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt; =
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> in</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> keyof</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
RemoveKindField&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB"> as</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Exclude&lt;T, U> = T extends U ? never : T'
>Exclude</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "kind"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">&gt;]: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in type RemoveKindField&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter)
Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">]</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Circle' >Circle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Circle.kind: &quot;circle&quot;'
>kind</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> "circle"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Circle.radius: number' >radius</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span

```

```

style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type KindlessCircle = {&#13; radius: number;&#13;}'
>KindlessCircle</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type RemoveKindField&#13;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type as
Exclude&#13;Property, &quot;kind&quot;]: Type[Property]; }'
>RemoveKindField</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Circle' >Circle</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type KindlessCircle = { radius: number; }</span>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAECUFMFsHsDdKgC4AskHIDWBLAdgCYagAOATrCZ
</div> </pre>

```

## Further Exploration

Mapped types work well with other features in this type manipulation section, for example here is [a mapped type using a conditional type](#) which returns either a `true` or `false` depending on whether an object has the property `pii` set to the literal `true`:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
ExtractPii&#13;Type> = { [Property in keyof Type]: Type[Property] extends {&#13; pii:
true;&#13;} ? true : false; }' >ExtractPii</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
ExtractPii&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; =
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> in</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> keyof</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
ExtractPii&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">]: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
ExtractPii&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> [</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Property' >Property</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">] </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> extends</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
pii: true' >pii</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> true</span> <span style="color: #000000"> } ? </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> true</span> <span style="color: #000000"> : </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> false</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span

```

```

style="color: #000000">};</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type DBFields = {&#13; id: {&#13; format:
&#quot;incrementing&#quot;}&#13; };&#13; name: {&#13; type:
string&#13; pii: true&#13; };&#13;}' >DBFields</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) id: {&#13; format:
&#quot;incrementing&#quot;}&#13;}' >id</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">: { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) format:
&#quot;incrementing&#quot;' >format</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">: </span><span style="color: #A31515">"incrementing"</span><span style="color:
#000000"> };</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) name: {&#13; type: string&#13; pii:
true&#13;}' >name</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: { </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) type: string' >type</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) pii:
true' >pii</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">true</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">};</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type ObjectsNeedingGDPRDeletion = {&#13; id: false&#13; name:
true&#13;}' >ObjectsNeedingGDPRDeletion</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ExtractPllType>
= { [Property in keyof Type]: Type[Property] extends {&#13; pii: true&#13; } ? true : false; }'
>ExtractPll</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type DBFields = {&#13; id: {&#13; format:
&#quot;incrementing&#quot;}&#13; };&#13; name: {&#13; type:
string&#13; pii: true&#13; };&#13;}' >DBFields</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'> </div>type ObjectsNeedingGDPRDeletion = { id: false; name:
true; }</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAogHsATgQwMbAAoEksB4Aq4EAfALxQCDAAIPzCIQuZeCngkNEwcXECQsO1idwB6M7ooAD1LIA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

# Template Literal Types

Template literal types build on [string literal types](#), and have the ability to expand into many strings via unions.

They have the same syntax as [template literal strings in JavaScript](#), but are used in type positions. When used with concrete literal types, a template literal produces a new string literal type by concatenating the contents.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type World = &quot;world&quot;'> World</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"world"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Greeting = &quot;hello world&quot;'> Greeting</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">`hello </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type World = &quot;world&quot;'> World</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">} </span> <span style="color: #A31515">`</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type Greeting = "hello world"</span> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBA6g9gJwDYBMoF4oCIDujVYDcAUMaJFAC'></div> </pre>
```

When a union is used in the interpolated position, the type is the set of every possible string literal that could be represented by each union member:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type EmailLocaleIds = &quot;welcome_email&quot; | &quot;email_heading&quot;'> EmailLocaleIds</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"welcome_email"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"email_heading"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type FooterLocaleIds = &quot;footer_title&quot; | &quot;footer_sendoff&quot;'> FooterLocaleIds</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"footer_title"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"footer_sendoff"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
```

```

<div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type AllLocaleIds =
&quot;welcome_email_id&quot; | &quot;email_heading_id&quot; |
&quot;footer_title_id&quot; | &quot;footer_sendoff_id&quot;'
>AllLocaleIds</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#A31515">`</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type EmailLocaleIds = &quot;welcome_email&quot; |
&quot;email_heading&quot;' >EmailLocaleIds</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000FF"> </span><span style="color: #000000">|</span><span style="color: #000000FF">
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type FooterLocaleIds =
&quot;footer_title&quot; | &quot;footer_sendoff&quot;'
>FooterLocaleIds</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color:
#A31515">_id`</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-
prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type AllLocaleIds =
"welcome_email_id" | "email_heading_id" | "footer_title_id" | "footer_sendoff_id"</span></code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAogtgQwJYBsAyB7AxlECSAlgm5QC8UA
</div></pre>

```

For each interpolated position in the template literal, the unions are cross multiplied:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
AllLocaleIds = &quot;welcome_email_id&quot; |
&quot;email_heading_id&quot; | &quot;footer_title_id&quot; |
&quot;footer_sendoff_id&quot;' >AllLocaleIds</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">`</span><span style="color:
#0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type EmailLocaleIds =
&quot;welcome_email&quot; | &quot;email_heading&quot;'
>EmailLocaleIds</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000FF"> </span><span
style="color: #000000">|</span><span style="color: #000000FF"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type FooterLocaleIds = &quot;footer_title&quot; |
&quot;footer_sendoff&quot;' >FooterLocaleIds</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">_id`</span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Lang =
&quot;en&quot; | &quot;ja&quot; | &quot;pt&quot;' >Lang</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"en"
</span><span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #A31515">"ja"</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> | </span><span style="color: #A31515">"pt"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type LocaleMessageIds = &quot;en_welcome_email_id&quot; |

```

```

&quot;en_email_heading_id&quot; | &quot;en_footer_title_id&quot; |
&quot;en_footer_sendoff_id&quot; | &quot;ja_welcome_email_id&quot; |
&quot;ja_email_heading_id&quot; | &quot;ja_footer_title_id&quot; |
&quot;ja_footer_sendoff_id&quot; | &quot;pt_welcome_email_id&quot; |
&quot;pt_email_heading_id&quot; | &quot;pt_footer_title_id&quot; |
&quot;pt_footer_sendoff_id&quot;' >LocaleMessageIds</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">`</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Lang =
&quot;en&quot; | &quot;ja&quot; | &quot;pt&quot;' >Lang</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span> <span style="color: #A31515">_</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
AllLocaleIds = &quot;welcome_email_id&quot; |
&quot;email_heading_id&quot; | &quot;footer_title_id&quot; |
&quot;footer_sendoff_id&quot;' >AllLocaleIds</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">}</span> <span style="color: #A31515">`</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div
class='arrow'> </div> type LocaleMessageIds = "en_welcome_email_id" | "en_email_heading_id" |
"en_footer_title_id" | "en_footer_sendoff_id" | "ja_welcome_email_id" | "ja_email_heading_id" |
"ja_footer_title_id" | "ja_footer_sendoff_id" | "pt_welcome_email_id" | "pt_email_heading_id" |
"pt_footer_title_id" | "pt_footer_sendoff_id"</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpggBAogtgQwJYBsAyB7AxglECSAlgM5QC8UA
IBQAHoA-EA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

We generally recommend that people use ahead-of-time generation for large string unions, but this is useful in smaller cases.

## String Unions in Types

The power in template literals comes when defining a new string based off an existing string inside a type.

For example, a common pattern in JavaScript is to extend an object based on the fields that it currently has. We'll provide a type definition for a function which adds support for an `on` function which lets you know when a value has changed:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const
person: any' >person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function makeWatchedObject(obj: any): any'
>makeWatchedObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">({</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) firstName: string' >firstName</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000">

```

```

</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Saoirse"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) lastName: string' >lastName</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Ronan"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number' >age</data-lsp>:</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">26</span> <span style="color:
#000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const person: any'
>person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='any' >on</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"firstNameChanged"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newValue: any'
>newValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">`firstName was
changed to </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">`${</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newValue: any' >newValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">}</span> <span style="color: #A31515">`!</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});</span> </div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDsHsFECd7XgZwFABMCMbJANglbxagBmArpD
</div> </pre>

```

Notice that `on` listens on the event `"firstNameChanged"`, not just `"firstName"`, template literals provide a way to handle this sort of string manipulation inside the type system:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
PropEventSource&lt;Type> = {&lt;#13; on(eventName: `${string &lt; &lt; keyof
Type}Changed`, callback: (newValue: any) => void): void;&lt;#13;}' >PropEventSource</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in type PropEventSource&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> = {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) on(eventName:
`${string &lt; &lt; keyof Type}Changed`, callback: (newValue: any) => void): void' >on</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) eventName: `${string &lt; &lt; keyof Type}Changed' >eventName</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">`</span> <span

```

```

style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000FF"> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&</span> <span style="color:
#000000FF"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span> <span style="color:
#000000FF"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
type PropEventSource&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">Changed`</span> <span style="color: #000000">,
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) callback: (newValue: any) =>
void' >callback</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: (</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newValue: any' >newValue</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">any</span> <span style="color:
#000000">) </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#008000">/// Create a "watched object" with an &apos;on&apos; method</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">/// so that you can watch for changes to properties.
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">declare</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>(obj: Type): Type & PropEventSource&lt;Type>'
>makeWatchedObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>(obj: Type): Type & PropEventSource&lt;Type>'
>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt;(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>(obj: Type): Type & PropEventSource&lt;Type>'
>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">): </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>(obj: Type):
Type & PropEventSource&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> & </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
PropEventSource&lt;Type> = {&#13; on(eventName: `${string & PropEventSource&lt;Type>'
Type}Changed`, callback: (newValue: any) => void): void;&#13;}' >PropEventSource</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>(obj: Type): Type &
PropEventSource&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt;;
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACgTgezAUQG4QHbAMoIK5wDGEAPACr
</div> </pre>

```

With this, we can build something that errors when given the wrong property:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>

```



```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const
person: {&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age:
number;&#13;} &amp; PropEventSource&#13; {&#13; firstName:
string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>' > person</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function makeWatchedObject&#13; {&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName:
string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>(obj: {&#13; firstName: string;&#13;
lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}): {&#13; firstName: string;&#13;
lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;} &amp; PropEventSource&#13;
{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>'
> makeWatchedObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ({</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) firstName: string' > firstName</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Saoirse" </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) lastName: string' > lastName</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Ronan" </span> <span style="color:
#000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) age: number' > age</data-lsp>:</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 26</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const person: {&#13; firstName: string;&#13;
lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;} &amp; PropEventSource&#13;
{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>'
> person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) on(eventName: &quot;firstNameChanged&quot; |
&quot;lastNameChanged&quot; | &quot;ageChanged&quot;, callback:
(newValue: any) => void): void' > on</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span>
<span style="color: #A31515"> "firstNameChanged" </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> ()
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> =&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {});</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // It's typo-resistant</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const person: {&#13;
firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;} &amp;
PropEventSource&#13; {&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13;
age: number;&#13;}>' > person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) on(eventName:
&quot;firstNameChanged&quot; | &quot;lastNameChanged&quot; |
&quot;ageChanged&quot;, callback: (newValue: any) => void): void' > on</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> <data-
err> &quot;firstName&quot;</data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> () </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> =&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {});</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>Argument of type "'firstName'" is not assignable to parameter of type
"'firstNameChanged' | 'lastNameChanged' | 'ageChanged'".</span> <span

```

```

class="code">2345</span></span><span class="error-behind">Argument of type "'firstName'"
is not assignable to parameter of type "'firstNameChanged' | 'lastNameChanged' | 'ageChanged'".
</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const person:
{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}
&#amp; PropEventSource&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName:
string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}' >person</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) on(eventName:
&#quot;firstNameChanged&#quot; | &#quot;lastNameChanged&#quot; |
&#quot;ageChanged&#quot;, callback: (newValue: any) => void): void' >on</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">( </span><span style="color: #A31515"><data-
err>&#quot;frstNameChanged&#quot;</data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">, ()
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">=&#gt;</span><span style="color: #000000"> {});</span>
</div><span class="error"><span>Argument of type "'frstNameChanged'" is not assignable to
parameter of type "'firstNameChanged' | 'lastNameChanged' | 'ageChanged'".</span><span
class="code">2345</span></span><span class="error-behind">Argument of type
"'frstNameChanged'" is not assignable to parameter of type "'firstNameChanged' |
'lastNameChanged' | 'ageChanged'".</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAC4CeADpKA/
JXutpTU9EysHNx8-
MJ1IKAAtNdc7ATXl3hcCiaGZEgDEkOj45Mz84tFNJZC4zEgCJodKgAEQsDRIJCQaGhGSgNomSG5aEAJQU/
</div></pre>

```

## Inference with Template Literals

Note how the last examples did not re-use the type of the original value. The callback used an `any`. Template literal types can infer from substitution positions.

We can make our last example generic to infer from parts of the `eventName` string to figure out the associated property.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
PropEventSource&#13;Type> = {&#13; on&#13;Key extends string &#amp; keyof
Type>(eventName: `${Key}Changed`, callback: (newValue: Type[Key]) => void): void;&#13;}'
>PropEventSource</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&#13;</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
PropEventSource&#13;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">=&#13;
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(method) on&#13;Key extends string &#amp; keyof Type>
(eventName: `${Key}Changed`, callback: (newValue: Type[Key]) => void): void' >on</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">&#13;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Key in on&#13;Key extends string &#amp; keyof Type>(eventName:

```

```

`{$Key}Changed`, callback: (newValue: Type[Key]) => void): void' >Key</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> & </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">keyof</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter)
Type in type PropEventSource&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> ( </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) eventName: `{$Key}Changed`'
>eventName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> ` </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> ${ </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Key in on&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> (
(eventName: `{$Key}Changed`, callback: (newValue: Type[Key]) => void): void' >Key</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> } </span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> Changed` </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) callback: (newValue: Type[Key]) => void' >callback</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: ( </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newValue: Type[Key]' >newValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in type
PropEventSource&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
[ </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Key in on&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#267F99">declare</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">function</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='function makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>' >makeWatchedObject</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type
parameter) Type in makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span>
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) obj: Type' >obj</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(type parameter) Type in makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">):
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> & </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type PropEventSource&lt;Type>' > {&#13; on&lt;Type>'
extends string &amp; keyof Type>(eventName: `{$Key}Changed`, callback: (newValue:
Type[Key]) => void): void;&#13;} >PropEventSource</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:

```

```

#000000">&lt;/span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
makeWatchedObject&lt;Type>(obj: Type): Type & PropEventSource&lt;Type>
'>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #267F99">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='const person: {&#13; firstName: string;&#13;
lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;} & PropEventSource&lt;
{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>'
>person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='function makeWatchedObject&lt;{&#13; firstName:
string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>(obj: {&#13;
firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}): {&#13;
firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;} & PropEventSource&lt;
{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>'
>makeWatchedObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">({</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) firstName: string' >firstName</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"Saoirse"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) lastName: string'
>lastName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"Ronan"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span
style="color: #098658">26</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='const person:
{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}
& PropEventSource&lt;{&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName:
string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>' >person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
on&lt;&quot;firstName&quot;>(eventName:
&quot;firstNameChanged&quot;, callback: (newValue: string) => void): void' >on</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"firstNameChanged"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newName: string' style='border-bottom: solid
2px lightgrey;'>newName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <span
class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>(parameter)
newName: string</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">`new name is </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">${</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) newName: string' >newName</data-

```

```

lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">.</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string' >toUpperCase</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000FF">()</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">`</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">});</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-
lsp lsp='const person: {&#13; firstName: string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age:
number;&#13;} &#amp;#13; PropEventSource&#13; {&#13; firstName:
string;&#13; lastName: string;&#13; age: number;&#13;}>' >person</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) on&#13; &quot;age&#13;&quot;> (eventName:
&#13; &quot;ageChanged&#13;&quot;, callback: (newValue: number) => void): void' >on</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"ageChanged"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newAge: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>newAge</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&#13;
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span>
<span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (parameter) newAge: number</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26">if</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) newAge: number' >newAge</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
&#13; 0) {</span> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.warn(...data: any[]): void' >warn</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"warning! negative age"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">});</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBACgTgezAUQG4QHbAMoIK5wDGEAPACrG
PCDJZ5NkAEwANiaRRaTxeGAAdBwjODAcCUb5-HiRPCoMkUijSowDKwAPR8wxC4Ui1gAPQA-
LywvcEBEIJSlgh5EZHBz2TZoDIJK4OSjKcAEABVMBPLyWMQQIxFDyOUkkskQZ4cakYWm4iBMgKs0lcgCCi
zYAtFYagkulMm0SVSAegJCgAAYSsHhXcMC95ZSUI03eDc3AMHJ5ABCdkQeRTGToKAe8H2wweEIAA' >Try
</div> </pre>

```

Here we made `on` into a generic method.

When a user calls with the string `"firstNameChanged"`, TypeScript will try to infer the right type for `Key`. To do that, it will match `Key` against the content prior to `"Changed"` and infer the string `"firstName"`. Once TypeScript figures that out, the `on` method can fetch the type of `firstName` on the original object, which is `string` in this case. Similarly, when called with `"ageChanged"`, TypeScript finds the type for the property `age` which is `number`.

Inference can be combined in different ways, often to deconstruct strings, and reconstruct them in different ways.

## Intrinsic String Manipulation Types

To help with string manipulation, TypeScript includes a set of types which can be used in string manipulation. These types come built-in to the compiler for performance and can't be found in the `.d.ts` files included with TypeScript.

### Uppercase<StringType>

Converts each character in the string to the uppercase version.

#### Example

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Greeting = &quot;Hello, world&quot;'>Greeting</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, world"</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ShoutyGreeting = &quot;HELLO, WORLD&quot;'>ShoutyGreeting</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Uppercase&lt;S extends string> = intrinsic'>Uppercase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Greeting = &quot;Hello, world&quot;'>Greeting</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type ShoutyGreeting = "HELLO, WORLD"</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type ASCIIKey&lt;Str extends string> = `ID-${Uppercase&lt;Str}>`>ASCIIKey</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Str in type ASCIIKey&lt;Str extends string>'>Str</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;= </span><span style="color: #A31515">`ID-</span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Uppercase&lt;S extends string> = intrinsic'>Uppercase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000FF">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Str in type ASCIIKey&lt;Str extends string>'>Str</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000FF">&gt;</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">`</span></div><div class='line'><span
```

```

style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type MainID = &quot;ID-MY_APP&quot;' >MainID</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type ASCIIICacheKey&lt;Str extends string> = `ID-${Uppercase&lt;Str}>`'
>ASCIIICacheKey</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #A31515"> "my_app" </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>type
MainID = "ID-MY_APP"</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBA4gThCwCWA7A5IAvFARACQgBsiB7AGig
</div> </pre>

```

## Lowercase<StringType>

Converts each character in the string to the lowercase equivalent.

### Example

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
Greeting = &quot;Hello, world&quot;' >Greeting</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Hello, world" </span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type QuietGreeting = &quot;hello,
world&quot;' >QuietGreeting</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Lowercase&lt;S extends string> =
intrinsic' >Lowercase</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Greeting = &quot;Hello, world&quot;'
>Greeting</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span
class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>type
QuietGreeting = "hello, world" </span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type ASCIIICacheKey&lt;Str extends string> = `id-${Lowercase&lt;Str}>`'
>ASCIIICacheKey</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Str in type ASCIIICacheKey&lt;Str
extends string>' >Str</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; = </span> <span
style="color: #A31515"> `id-</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> ${</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Lowercase&lt;S extends string> = intrinsic'
>Lowercase</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF"> &lt;</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Str in type ASCIIICacheKey&lt;Str extends string>'
>Str</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF"> &gt;</span> <span style="color:

```

```
#0000FF"> }</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> `</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type MainID = &quot;id-my_app&quot;' >MainID</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type ASCIIKeyCacheKey&lt;Str extends string> = `id-`${Lowercase&lt;Str>}`'
>ASCIIKeyCacheKey</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span
style="color: #A31515"> "MY_APP"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type
MainID = "id-my_app"</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBA4gThCwCWA7A5IAvFARACQgBsiB7AGic
ExbhoAQQDKAYQCSNq9MkALCAGkIIBReBwoEAB7AEKj0slCyPqpQgAGyPQAAtAAkAN6i4IJyit5wagC+M!
</div> </pre>
```

### Capitalize<StringType>

Converts the first character in the string to an uppercase equivalent.

#### Example

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
LowercaseGreeting = &quot;hello, world&quot;' >LowercaseGreeting</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "hello, world"
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='type Greeting = &quot;Hello, world&quot;' >Greeting</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='type Capitalize&lt;S extends string> = intrinsic' >Capitalize</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type
LowercaseGreeting = &quot;hello, world&quot;' >LowercaseGreeting</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'>
</span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> type Greeting = "Hello, world"</span>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAMg9gdwgJwMYEMDOEDiyITACWAdgOZ
</div> </pre>
```

### Uncapitalize<StringType>

Converts the first character in the string to a lowercase equivalent.

#### Example



```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type
UppercaseGreeting = &quot;HELLO WORLD&quot;' >UppercaseGreeting</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"HELLO
WORLD"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type UncomfortableGreeting = &quot;hELLO WORLD&quot;'
>UncomfortableGreeting</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Uncapitalize&lt;S extends string> = intrinsic'
>Uncapitalize</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type UppercaseGreeting = &quot;HELLO WORLD&quot;'
>UppercaseGreeting</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>type
UncomfortableGreeting = "hELLO WORLD"</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAqmkCcDGBDAzhA4giFgEsA7AcygF4oAi/
</div></pre> <details> <summary>Technical details on the intrinsic string manipulation
types</summary> <p>The code, as of TypeScript 4.1, for these intrinsic functions uses the
JavaScript string runtime functions directly for manipulation and are not locale aware.</p> <code>
<pre> function applyStringMapping(symbol: Symbol, str: string) { switch
(intrinsicTypeKinds.get(symbol.escapedName as string)) { case IntrinsicTypeKind.Uppercase: return
str.toUpperCase(); case IntrinsicTypeKind.Lowercase: return str.toLowerCase(); case
IntrinsicTypeKind.Capitalize: return str.charAt(0).toUpperCase() + str.slice(1); case
IntrinsicTypeKind.Uncapitalize: return str.charAt(0).toLowerCase() + str.slice(1); } return str; }</pre>
</code> </details>
```

# Classes

<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Classes'>Classes (MDN)</a></p> </blockquote>

TypeScript offers full support for the `class` keyword introduced in ES2015.

As with other JavaScript language features, TypeScript adds type annotations and other syntax to allow you to express relationships between classes and other types.

## Class Members

Here's the most basic class - an empty one:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Point'>Point</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEAKD2BLAdgF2gbwL5A'>Try</a> </div> </pre>
```

This class isn't very useful yet, so let's start adding some members.

### Fields

A field declaration creates a public writeable property on a class:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Point'>Point</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> :</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number'>y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> :</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const pt: Point'>pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
```

```
= </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Point(): Point' >Point</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='const pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAGcBcCcEsDG0AKsD2AHApraBPASQDt5p4BDAC
</div> </pre>
```

As with other locations, the type annotation is optional, but will be an implicit `any` if not specified.

Fields can also have *initializers*; these will run automatically when the class is instantiated:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Point'
>Point</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
= </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Point(): Point' >Point</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#008000"> </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">`</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='const pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">}</span> <span style="color: #A31515">,</span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">${</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const pt: Point'
>pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000FF">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">
```

```
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">}
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">`</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEAKD2BLAdgF2gbwFDWgD2gF5oAGAbh
</div> </pre>
```

Just like with `const`, `let`, and `var`, the initializer of a class property will be used to infer its type:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const pt:
Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='constructor Point(): Point' >Point</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='const pt: Point' >pt</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"0"</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Type 'string' is not assignable to type
'number'.</span> <span class="code">2322</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Type
'string' is not assignable to type 'number'.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFAGMAbAQ0UVAUAU
</div> </pre>
```

## --strictPropertyInitialization

The `strictPropertyInitialization` setting controls whether class fields need to be initialized in the constructor.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
BadGreeter' >BadGreeter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-
err><data-lsp lsp='(property) BadGreeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp> </data-err> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Property 'name' has no
initializer and is not definitely assigned in the constructor.</span> <span
class="code">2564</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Property 'name' has no initializer
and is not definitely assigned in the constructor.</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwFYBsAWAUAMYA2AhooqA
</div> </pre> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color:
#000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
```

```
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class GoodGreeter' >GoodGreeter</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) GoodGreeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">()
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) GoodGreeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEDiD28AmsBOBTdAXdroG8AoaaAOzAFtC
</div></pre>
```

Note that the field needs to be initialized *in the constructor itself*. TypeScript does not analyze methods you invoke from the constructor to detect initializations, because a derived class might override those methods and fail to initialize the members.

If you intend to definitely initialize a field through means other than the constructor (for example, maybe an external library is filling in part of your class for you), you can use the *definite assignment assertion operator*, `!:`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
OKGreeter' >OKGreeter</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">>// Not
initialized, but no error</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) OKGreeter.name: string' >name</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">!:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEDyDSBxATgU1QF1c6BvAUNNAPTHQBy,
</div></pre>
```

`readonly`

Fields may be prefixed with the `readonly` modifier. This prevents assignments to the field outside of the constructor.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
Greeter' >Greeter</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">readonly</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Greeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"world"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) otherName: string |
undefined' >otherName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">?: </span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) otherName: string | undefined' >otherName</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> != </span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='var
undefined' >undefined</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Greeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) otherName: string' >otherName</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-
lsp lsp='(method) Greeter.err(): void' >err</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property) Greeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp></data-err></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"not ok"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Cannot assign to 'name'
because it is a read-only property.</span><span class="code">2540</span></span><span
class="error-behind">Cannot assign to 'name' because it is a read-only property.</span><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const g: Greeter'
>g</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='constructor Greeter(otherName?: string | undefined): Greeter' >Greeter</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='const g: Greeter' >g</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property)

```

```
Greeter.name: string' >name</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #A31515">"also not ok"</span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><span class="error"><span>Cannot assign to 'name' because it is a read-only
property.</span><span class="code">2540</span></span><span class="error-behind">Cannot
assign to 'name' because it is a read-only property.</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYAsAGd2cAoAYwBsBDRR
pAA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

## Constructors

```
<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-
US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Classes/constructor'>Constructor (MDN)</a> <br/> </p>
</blockquote>
```

Class constructors are very similar to functions. You can add parameters with type annotations, default values, and overloads:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Point'
>Point</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">//
Normal signature with defaults</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">0</span>
<span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) y: number' >y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Point.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number' >y</data-lsp></span>
```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEAKD2BLAdgF2gbwFDWgDwC5pkBXAW
</div></pre> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color:
#000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class Point' >Point</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">//
Overloads</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y:
string' >y</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s:
string' >s</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) xs:
any' >xs</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) y: any' >y</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">?:
</span><span style="color: #267F99">any</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">//
TBD</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEAKD2BLAdgF2gbwFDWgej2gHkA3AUw
</div></pre>

```

There are just a few differences between class constructor signatures and function signatures:

- Constructors can't have type parameters - these belong on the outer class declaration, which we'll learn about later
- Constructors can't have return type annotations - the class instance type is always what's returned

## Super Calls



Just as in JavaScript, if you have a base class, you'll need to call `super()` in your constructor body before using any `this.` members:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.k: number'>k</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">4</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Derived'>Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">> // Prints a wrong value in ES5; throws exception in ES6</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-err>this</data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.k: number'>k</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class="error"><span>'super' must be called before accessing 'this' in the constructor of a derived class.</span><span class="code">17009</span></span><span class="error-behind">'super' must be called before accessing 'this' in the constructor of a derived class.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">super</span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFyglwHYAMWCCaAoAYwBsBDRRL EA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

Forgetting to call `super` is an easy mistake to make in JavaScript, but TypeScript will tell you when it's necessary.

## Methods

<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-

US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Functions/Method\_definitions'>Method definitions</a> <br/>  
</p> </blockquote>

A function property on a class is called a *method*. Methods can use all the same type annotations as functions and constructors:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Point'>Point</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Point.scale(n: number): void'>scale</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> *= </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Point.y: number'>y</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> *= </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) n: number'>n</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEAKD2BLAdgF2gbwFDWgD2gF5oBGABg'></div></pre>
```

Other than the standard type annotations, TypeScript doesn't add anything else new to methods.

Note that inside a method body, it is still mandatory to access fields and other methods via `this`. . An unqualified name in a method body will always refer to something in the enclosing scope:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='let x: number'
```

```

>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class C' >C</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) C.x: string' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">
= </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(method) C.m(): void' >m</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#008000">>// This is trying to modify &apos;x&apos; from line 1, not the class property</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-err><data-lsp lsp='let x: number' >x</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"world"</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><span class="error"><span>Type 'string' is not assignable to type
'number'.</span><span class="code">2322</span></span><span class="error-behind">Type
'string' is not assignable to type 'number'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGY1oFABtIAXUAD1QDsBX
</div></pre>

```

## Getters / Setters

Classes can also have *accessors*:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class C'
>C</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
C._length: number' >_length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">get</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
C.length: number' >length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) C._length: number' >_length</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div

```

```

class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">set</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
C.length: number' >length</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) value: number' >value</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) C._length: number' >_length</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) value: number' >value</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEDC0G8BQ1oH0QFMB2BzALgBbQC80AI
</div></pre>

```

Note that a field-backed get/set pair with no extra logic is very rarely useful in JavaScript. It's fine to expose public fields if you don't need to add additional logic during the get/set operations.

TypeScript has some special inference rules for accessors:

- If no `set` exists, the property is automatically `readonly`
- The type of the setter parameter is inferred from the return type of the getter
- If the setter parameter has a type annotation, it must match the return type of the getter
- Getters and setters must have the same [Member Visibility](#)

It is not possible to have accessors with different types for getting and setting.

If you have a getter without a setter, the field is automatically `readonly`

## Index Signatures

Classes can declare index signatures; these work the same as [Index Signatures for other object types](#):

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
MyClass' >MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> [</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">]:</span><span
style="color: #267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000"> | (</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp></span><span

```

```

style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">) </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) MyClass.check(s: string): boolean'
>check</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp></span> <span style="color:
#000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">[</span> <span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s: string' >s</data-lsp></span> <span style="color:
#000000">]</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyCeBhcVoG8BQ1oG0IC5olAXAJwEsA7,
</div> </pre>

```

Because the index signature type needs to also capture the types of methods, it's not easy to usefully use these types. Generally it's better to store indexed data in another place instead of on the class instance itself.

## Class Heritage

Like other languages with object-oriented features, classes in JavaScript can inherit from base classes.

### implements Clauses

You can use an `implements` clause to check that a class satisfies a particular `interface`. An error will be issued if a class fails to correctly implement it:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface
Pingable' >Pingable</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Pingable.ping(): void' >ping</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">():
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">void</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:

```

```

#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Sonar' >Sonar</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">implements</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Pingable' >Pingable</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Sonar.ping(): void'
>ping</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"ping!"</span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='class Ball' >Ball</data-lsp></data-err>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">implements</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Pingable' >Pingable</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> {</span></div><span class="error"><span>Class 'Ball' incorrectly implements
interface 'Pingable'. Property 'ping' is missing in type 'Ball' but required in type 'Pingable'.</span>
<span class="code">2420</span></span><span class="error-behind">Class 'Ball' incorrectly
implements interface 'Pingable'. Property 'ping' is missing in type 'Ball' but required in type
'Pingable'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Ball.pong(): void' >pong</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"pong!"</span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwBY0AYBQBLAOwBcYAZAQ\
lcNDdevKjsRwOAOjZxGggBEAtYAhIHCCryKisqq6qAAQhRsbAbGpubElkysHM72fDoBTi6u7oSePn4BwcXhl
</div></pre>

```

Classes may also implement multiple interfaces, e.g. `class C implements A, B {`.

## Cautions

It's important to understand that an `implements` clause is only a check that the class can be treated as the interface type. It doesn't change the type of the class or its methods *at all*. A common source of error is to assume that an `implements` clause will change the class type - it doesn't!

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface
Checkable' >Checkable</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Checkable.check(name: string): boolean' >check</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span
style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">):</span> <span
style="color: #267F99">boolean</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class NameChecker' >NameChecker</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">implements</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface Checkable'
>Checkable</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) NameChecker.check(s: any): boolean' >check</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) s: any' >s</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
{ </span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Parameter 's' implicitly has an 'any' type.</span>
<span class="code">7006</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Parameter 's' implicitly
has an 'any' type.</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #008000"> // Notice no error here</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) s:
any' >s</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='any' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;' >toLowerCase</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">() === </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"ok"
</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span>
<span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> any</span> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygOwAYMDYBQBLAOwBcYAzA(
</div> </pre>

```

In this example, we perhaps expected that `s`'s type would be influenced by the `name: string` parameter of `check`. It is not - `implements` clauses don't change how the class body is checked or its type inferred.

Similarly, implementing an interface with an optional property doesn't create that property:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span>

```

```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface A'
>A</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) A.x:
number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
A.y?: number | undefined' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">?:</span> <span
style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class C' >C</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">implements</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='interface A' >A</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) C.x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> =</span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const c: C' >c</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> =</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor C(): C'
>C</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const c: C' >c</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='any' >y</data-lsp>
</data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =</span> <span style="color:
#098658">10</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class="error">
<span>Property 'y' does not exist on type 'C'.</span> <span class="code">2339</span> </span>
<span class="error-behind">Property 'y' does not exist on type 'C'.</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYME4BQBLAOwBcYAzAC
</div> </pre>

```

## extends Clauses

```

<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Classes/extends'>extends keyword (MDN)</a> <br/> </p>
</blockquote>

```

Classes may **extend** from a base class. A derived class has all the properties and methods of its base class, and also define additional members.



```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
Animal' >Animal</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Animal.move(): void' >move</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">()
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"Moving along!"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Dog'
>Dog</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Animal' >Animal</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Dog woof(times: number): void' >woof</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) times: number' >times</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">for</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let i: number' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let i: number' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> &lt; </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) times:
number' >times</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">; </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='let i: number' >i</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ++</span>
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"woof!"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const d: Dog' >d</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Dog():
Dog' >Dog</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <div class='line'>

```

```

<span style="color: #008000">// Base class method</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const d: Dog' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Animal.move(): void'
>move</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #008000">// Derived class method</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const d: Dog' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Dog woof(times:
number): void' >woof</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #098658">3</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECB2BLAtmE0DeAoa1kHsA3AUwAoBK1
ogknSoz2QtLKyw19gDMMkA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

## Overriding Methods

```

<blockquote class='bg-reading'><p>Background Reading:<br /><a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Operators/super'>super keyword (MDN)</a><br/></p>
</blockquote>

```

A derived class can also override a base class field or property. You can use the `super .` syntax to access base class methods. Note that because JavaScript classes are a simple lookup object, there is no notion of a "super field".

TypeScript enforces that a derived class is always a subtype of its base class.

For example, here's a legal way to override a method:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Base.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.<
/><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Hello, world!"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Derived'
>Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:

```

```
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Derived.greet(name?: string | undefined): void' >greet</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) name: string | undefined' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">?: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color:
#000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string | undefined' >name</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='var
undefined' >undefined</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">super</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(method) Base.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span
style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">`Hello, </span><span style="color: #0000FF">${</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000FF">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
String.toUpperCase(): string' >toUpperCase</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000FF">
()</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span><span style="color: #A31515">`</span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const d: Derived' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor Derived(): Derived' >Derived</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const d: Derived' >d</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Derived.greet(name?: string | undefined): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='const d: Derived' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Derived.greet(name?: string | undefined): void'
>greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"reader"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
```

href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBCKFNoG8BQ1oHMBOCEBcAKAShXQ2r  
</div></pre>

It's important that a derived class follow its base class contract. Remember that it's very common (and always legal!) to refer to a derived class instance through a base class reference:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Alias the derived instance through a base class reference</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const b: Base' >b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const d: Base' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// No problem</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const b: Base' >b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Base.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBCKFNoG8BQ1oHMBOCEBcAKAShXQ2r</div></pre>
```

What if `Derived` didn't follow `Base`'s contract?

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Base.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, world!"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Derived' >Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// Make this parameter required</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(method) Derived.greet(name: string): void' >greet</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, world!"</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code></pre>
```

```
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string'
>name</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><span class="error">
<span>Property 'greet' in type 'Derived' is not assignable to the same property in base type 'Base'.
Type '(name: string) =&gt; void' is not assignable to type '() =&gt; void'.</span><span
class="code">2416</span></span><span class="error-behind">Property 'greet' in type 'Derived'
is not assignable to the same property in base type 'Base'. Type '(name: string) =&gt; void' is not
assignable to type '() =&gt; void'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">`Hello, </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">${</span><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) name: string'
>name</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000FF">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) String.toUpperCase(): string' >toUpperCase</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000FF">())</span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">`</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCDoe2gZwFygEwBYCMA2AUAMYA2Ahooq
</div></pre>
```

If we compiled this code despite the error, this sample would then crash:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const b:
Base' >b</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #0000FF"> new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Derived(): Derived' >Derived</data-
lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000"> // Crashes because "name" will be undefined</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const b: Base' >b</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Base.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEkoGdnwEloQbwFD3gHM4QAXACgI
</div></pre>
```

## Initialization Order

The order that JavaScript classes initialize can be surprising in some cases. Let's consider this code:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF"> class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base'
> Base</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Base.name: string' > name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #A31515"> "base"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> constructor</span> <span style="color: #000000"> () {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='var console: Console' > console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
> log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> "My name is " </span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> this</span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.name: string' > name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> );</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Derived' > Derived</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> extends</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' > Base</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Derived.name:
string' > name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#A31515"> "derived"</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#008000"> > // Prints "base", not "derived"</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF"> const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const d: Derived' > d</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Derived(): Derived' > Derived</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ();</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBCKFNoG8BQ1oDswFskF5oAiAl0SIG51j
</div> </pre>

```

What happened here?

The order of class initialization, as defined by JavaScript, is:

- The base class fields are initialized
- The base class constructor runs
- The derived class fields are initialized

- The derived class constructor runs

This means that the base class constructor saw its own value for `name` during its own constructor, because the derived class field initializations hadn't run yet.

## Inheriting Built-in Types

Note: If you don't plan to inherit from built-in types like `Array`, `Error`, `Map`, etc., you may skip this section

In ES2015, constructors which return an object implicitly substitute the value of `this` for any callers of `super(...)`. It is necessary for generated constructor code to capture any potential return value of `super(...)` and replace it with `this`.

As a result, subclassing `Error`, `Array`, and others may no longer work as expected. This is due to the fact that constructor functions for `Error`, `Array`, and the like use ECMAScript 6's `new.target` to adjust the prototype chain; however, there is no way to ensure a value for `new.target` when invoking a constructor in ECMAScript 5. Other downlevel compilers generally have the same limitation by default.

For a subclass like the following:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
MsgError'>MsgError</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var Error: ErrorConstructor'>Error</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: string'>m</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span>{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">super</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: string'>m</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) MsgError.sayHello(): string'>sayHello</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello "</span><span style="color:
#000000"> + </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.
```

```
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Error.message: string'
>message</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyEHMCiAnFB7F0CmAPALtgHYAmMqG
</div> </pre>
```

you may find that:

- methods may be `undefined` on objects returned by constructing these subclasses, so calling `sayHello` will result in an error.
- `instanceof` will be broken between instances of the subclass and their instances, so `(new MsgError()) instanceof MsgError` will return `false`.

As a recommendation, you can manually adjust the prototype immediately after any `super(...)` calls.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
MsgError' >MsgError</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='var Error: ErrorConstructor' >Error</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: string' >m</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">super</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) m: string' >m</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #008000"> // Set the prototype explicitly.</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp
lsp='var Object: ObjectConstructor' >Object</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
ObjectConstructor.setPrototypeOf(o: any, proto: object | null): any' >setPrototypeOf</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">this</span>
<span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
MsgError' >MsgError</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) MsgError.prototype: MsgError'
>prototype</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) MsgError.sayHello(): string'

```



```
>sayHello</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello "</span><span
style="color: #000000"> + </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Error.message: string' >message</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyEHMCiAnFB7F0CmAPALtgHYAmMqG
</div></pre>
```

However, any subclass of `MsgError` will have to manually set the prototype as well. For runtimes that don't support [Object.setPrototypeOf](#), you may instead be able to use [\\_\\_proto\\_\\_](#).

Unfortunately, [these workarounds will not work on Internet Explorer 10 and prior](#). One can manually copy methods from the prototype onto the instance itself (i.e. `MsgError.prototype` onto `this`), but the prototype chain itself cannot be fixed.

## Member Visibility

You can use TypeScript to control whether certain methods or properties are visible to code outside the class.

`public`

The default visibility of class members is `public`. A `public` member can be accessed by anywhere:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
Greeter' >Greeter</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">public</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(method) Greeter.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"hi!"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
```

```

style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const g: Greeter'
>g</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='constructor Greeter(): Greeter' >Greeter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='const g: Greeter' >g</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Greeter.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEDiBOBTRAXR9oG8BQ1oAcBXAlxAEthoB
</div> </pre>

```

Because `public` is already the default visibility modifier, you don't ever *need* to write it on a class member, but might choose to do so for style/readability reasons.

## protected

`protected` members are only visible to subclasses of the class they're declared in.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
Greeter' >Greeter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">public</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(method) Greeter.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, "</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Greeter.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">protected</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Greeter.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"hi"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class SpecialGreeter' >SpecialGreeter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:

```

```

#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Greeter' >Greeter</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">public</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
SpecialGreeter.howdy(): void' >howdy</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ()
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#008000"> // OK to access protected member here</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console:
Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #A31515"> "Howdy, "
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> this</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Greeter.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> );
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF"> const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const g: SpecialGreeter' >g</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor SpecialGreeter(): SpecialGreeter'
>SpecialGreeter</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ();</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const g: SpecialGreeter' >g</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Greeter.greet(): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ();
</span> <span style="color: #008000"> // OK</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const g: SpecialGreeter' >g</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-err> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Greeter.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> );</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Property 'getName' is protected and
only accessible within class 'Greeter' and its subclasses.</span> <span class="code">2445</span>
</span> <span class="error-behind">Property 'getName' is protected and only accessible within
class 'Greeter' and its subclasses.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCDoe2gZwFygEwBYMFYBQBjAGwENFFQBx
AhlyUABINkh8XmJCKhp6aFBIAA96eVDyCroGWPZuPgFrOAB3UIBPcSk4kFAAeQBpKzhQYnx8SDzAuGCw
--n5cP4johaEJQABeUDySC9ApFEpIFpVCQ+QQOES0NGgMZTXAYxy0FxPbxAA'>Try</a> </div>
</pre>

```

## Exposure of protected members

Derived classes need to follow their base class contracts, but may choose to expose a subtype of base class with more capabilities. This includes making `protected` members `public`:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">protected</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.m:
number' >m</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class Derived' >Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #008000">>// No modifier, so default is &apos;public&apos;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Derived.m: number' >m</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">15</span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const d: Derived' >d</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor
Derived(): Derived' >Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const d:
Derived' >d</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Derived.m: number' >m</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span><span style="color: #008000">>// OK</span></div></code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBCKFNoG8BQ1oAcBOB7ALgsIQCbQC2C
</div></pre>

```

Note that `Derived` was already able to freely read and write `m`, so this doesn't meaningfully alter the "security" of this situation. The main thing to note here is that in the derived class, we need to be careful to repeat the `protected` modifier if this exposure isn't intentional.

## Cross-hierarchy protected access

Different OOP languages disagree about whether it's legal to access a `protected` member through a base class reference:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">protected</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x:
number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#098658">1</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class Derived1' >Derived1</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">protected</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Derived1.x: number' >x</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#098658">5</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class Derived2' >Derived2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Derived2.f1(other: Derived2):
void' >f1</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: Derived2' >other</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Derived2'
>Derived2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) other: Derived2' >other</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x: number' >x</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">10</span> <span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Derived2.f2(other: Base): void' >f2</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other:
Base' >other</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">)</span>
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: Base' >other</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:

```

```
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x:
number'>x</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span
class="error"><span>Property 'x' is protected and only accessible through an instance of class
'Derived2'. This is an instance of class 'Base'.</span><span class="code">2446</span></span>
<span class="error-behind">Property 'x' is protected and only accessible through an instance of
class 'Derived2'. This is an instance of class 'Base'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwBYMDYBQBjAGwENFFQAI
</div></pre>
```

Java, for example, considers this to be legal. On the other hand, C# and C++ chose that this code should be illegal.

TypeScript sides with C# and C++ here, because accessing `x` in `Derived2` should only be legal from `Derived2`'s subclasses, and `Derived1` isn't one of them. Moreover, if accessing `x` through a `Derived2` reference is illegal (which it certainly should be!), then accessing it through a base class reference should never improve the situation.

See also [Why Can't I Access A Protected Member From A Derived Class?](#) which explains more of C#'s reasoning.

## private

`private` is like `protected`, but doesn't allow access to the member even from subclasses:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">private</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x:
number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const b: Base'>b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor Base(): Base'>Base</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">//
Can't access from outside the class</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
```

```
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data:
any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='const b: Base' >b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x: number'
>x</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span
class="error"><span>Property 'x' is private and only accessible within class 'Base'.</span><span
class="code">2341</span></span><span class="error-behind">Property 'x' is private and only
accessible within class 'Base'.</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBGAUAMYA2AhooqA
</div></pre>


```
// Can't access in
subclasses</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x: number' >x</data-lsp>
</data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class="error">
<span>Property 'x' is private and only accessible within class 'Base'.</span><span
class="code">2341</span></span><span class="error-behind">Property 'x' is private and only
accessible within class 'Base'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBGAUAMYA2AhooqA
</div></pre>
```


```

Because `private` members aren't visible to derived classes, a derived class can't increase its visibility:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">private</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Base.x:
```

```

number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-err><data-lsp lsp='class Derived' >Derived</data-lsp></data-err></span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><span class="error">
<span>Class 'Derived' incorrectly extends base class 'Base'. Property 'x' is private in type 'Base' but
not in type 'Derived'.</span><span class="code">2415</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Class 'Derived' incorrectly extends base class 'Base'. Property 'x' is private in type 'Base'
but not in type 'Derived'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Derived.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}<
/span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwBYCMBWAUAMYA2Ahooc
</div></pre>

```

## Cross-instance private access

Different OOP languages disagree about whether different instances of the same class may access each others' `private` members. While languages like Java, C#, C++, Swift, and PHP allow this, Ruby does not.

TypeScript does allow cross-instance `private` access:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class A'
>A</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">private</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) A.x:
number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#098658">10</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">public</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
A.sameAs(other: A): boolean' >sameAs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: A' >other</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// No
error</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:

```



```
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: A' >other</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) A.x: number'
>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) A.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECc0G8BQ1oAcBOBLAbmALgKbQAe0Av
</div></pre>
```

## Caveats

Like other aspects of TypeScript's type system, `private` and `protected` are only enforced during type checking. This means that JavaScript runtime constructs like `in` or simple property lookup can still access a `private` or `protected` member:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
MySafe' >MySafe</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">private</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MySafe.secretKey: number' >secretKey</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">12345</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyCeBIMAzAptA3gKGtADgE4CWAAbmAC
</div></pre><pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000">
<div class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #008000">// In a JavaScript file...</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1">s</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#795E26">MySafe</span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #008000">// Will print 12345</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #001080">console</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26">log</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080">s</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#001080">secretKey</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div></code></div>
</pre>
```

If you need to protect values in your class from malicious actors, you should use mechanisms that offer hard runtime privacy, such as closures, weak maps, or [private fields](#).

## Static Members

<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Classes/static'>Static Members (MDN)</a> <br/> </p> </blockquote>

Classes may have `static` members. These members aren't associated with a particular instance of the class. They can be accessed through the class constructor object itself:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'> MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">static</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.x: number'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658"> 0</span> <span style="color: #000000"> ;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">static</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) MyClass.printX(): void'> printX</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> () {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'> console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'> log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'> MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.x: number'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> );</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'> console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'> log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'> MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.x: number'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> );</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'> MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.x: number'> x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> );</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'> MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> .</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) MyClass.printX(): void'> printX</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ();</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
```

[href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyCeBhcVoG8BQ1oQC5lwEthoAPaAXm](https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyCeBhcVoG8BQ1oQC5lwEthoAPaAXm)  
</div></pre>

Static members can also use the same `public`, `protected`, and `private` visibility modifiers:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
MyClass' >MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">private</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">static</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.x: number' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"><(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'
>MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.x: number' >x</data-lsp></data-err>
</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class="error"><span>Property 'x'
is private and only accessible within class 'MyClass'.</span><span class="code">2341</span>
</span><span class="error-behind">Property 'x' is private and only accessible within class
'MyClass'.</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBGAUAMYA2AhooqA
</div></pre>
```

Static members are also inherited:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">static</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Base.getGreeting(): string' >getGreeting</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"Hello world"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Derived'
>Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
```

```
#0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Derived.myGreeting: string' >myGreeting</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='class Derived' >Derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Base.getGreeting(): string' >getGreeting</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBCKFNoG8BQ1oQC5iwS2GgHMEsBxAJ\
</div></pre>
```

## Special Static Names

It's generally not safe/possible to overwrite properties from the `Function` prototype. Because classes are themselves functions that can be invoked with `new`, certain `static` names can't be used. Function properties like `name`, `length`, and `call` aren't valid to define as `static` members:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class S'
>S</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">static</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='(property) S.name:
string' >name</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"S!"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span
class="error"><span>Static property 'name' conflicts with built-in property 'Function.name' of
constructor function 'S'.</span><span class="code">2699</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Static property 'name' conflicts with built-in property 'Function.name' of constructor
function 'S'.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwDYCcWBQBjAGwENFFQBI
</div></pre>
```

## Why No Static Classes?

TypeScript (and JavaScript) don't have a construct called `static class` the same way C# and Java do.

Those constructs *only* exist because those languages force all data and functions to be inside a class; because that restriction doesn't exist in TypeScript, there's no need for them. A class with only a single instance is typically just represented as a normal *object* in JavaScript/TypeScript.

For example, we don't need a "static class" syntax in TypeScript because a regular object (or even top-level function) will do the job just as well:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Unnecessary "static" class</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class MyStaticClass'>MyStaticClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"><{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">static</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) MyStaticClass.doSomething(): void'>doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Preferred (alternative 1)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function doSomething(): void'>doSomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Preferred (alternative 2)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const MyHelperObject: {&#13; dosomething(): void;&#13;}'>MyHelperObject</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) dosomething(): void'>dosomething</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {},</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEFUDtIUwYxgZ0QQwE4E9QCJEBcU8BLObUOAGx\LoANAYA3EA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

## Generic Classes

Classes, much like interfaces, can be generic. When a generic class is instantiated with `new`, its type parameters are inferred the same way as in a function call:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Box&#13;Type'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&#13;Type'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&#13;Type'>contents: Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&#13;Type'>Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div></code></pre>
```

```
#0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) value: Type' >value</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&lt;Type>.contents: Type' >contents</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">=</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter)
value: Type' >value</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const b:
Box&lt;string>' >b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">=</span><span
style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor Box&lt;string>(value: string): Box&lt;string>'
>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"hello!"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-
prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const b: Box&lt;string>;
</span></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBBCD2APAPAFQJ4AcCmA+aA3gFDTTDwl
</div></pre>
```

Classes can use generic constraints and defaults the same way as interfaces.

## Type Parameters in Static Members

This code isn't legal, and it may not be obvious why:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
Box&lt;Type>' >Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in Box&lt;Type>' >Type</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">static</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Box&lt;Type>.defaultValue: any' >defaultValue</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-err><data-lsp lsp='any' >Type</data-
lsp></data-err></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class="error">
<span>Static members cannot reference class type parameters.</span><span
class="code">2302</span></span><span class="error-behind">Static members cannot reference
class type parameters.</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div>
</code><a class='playground-link'
```

```
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAMaBQBjAGwENFFQArAjb5QAE0gAzYgFdC-AGrFCsyKiasA3LgC+QA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

Remember that types are always fully erased! At runtime, there's only *one* `Box.defaultValue` property slot. This means that setting `Box<string>.defaultValue` (if that were possible) would *also* change `Box<number>.defaultValue` - not good. The `static` members of a generic class can never refer to the class's type parameters.

## this at Runtime in Classes

<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Operators/this'>this keyword (MDN)</a><br/> </p> </blockquote>

It's important to remember that TypeScript doesn't change the runtime behavior of JavaScript, and that JavaScript is somewhat famous for having some peculiar runtime behaviors.

JavaScript's handling of `this` is indeed unusual:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'>MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.name: string'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">"MyClass"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) MyClass.getName(): string'>getName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.name: string'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass'>c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor MyClass(): MyClass'>MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const obj: {&#13; name: string;&#13; getName: () => string;&#13;}'>obj</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div></code></pre>
```

```
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) name: string'
>name</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"obj"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
getName: () => string' >getName</data-lsp>:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass' >c</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
MyClass.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">,<
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">};</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">>// Prints "obj", not "MyClass"</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const obj: {&#13; name:
string;&#13; getName: () => string;&#13;}' >obj</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) getName: () =>
string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> </code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyCeBhcVoG8BQ1oDswFsBTaAXmgCIFII
</div> </pre>
```

Long story short, by default, the value of `this` inside a function depends on *how the function was called*. In this example, because the function was called through the `obj` reference, its value of `this` was `obj` rather than the class instance.

This is rarely what you want to happen! TypeScript provides some ways to mitigate or prevent this kind of error.

## Arrow Functions

```
<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Functions/Arrow_functions'>Arrow functions (MDN)</a>
<br/> </p> </blockquote>
```

If you have a function that will often be called in a way that loses its `this` context, it can make sense to use an arrow function property instead of a method definition:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
MyClass' >MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
```



```

lsp='(property) MyClass.name: string' >name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
= </span><span style="color: #A31515">"MyClass"</span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.getName: () => string' >getName</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = () </span><span style="color: #0000FF">=>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.name: string'
>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass'
>c</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='constructor MyClass(): MyClass' >MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const g: () =>
string' >g</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass' >c</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.getName: ()
=> string' >getName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// Prints "MyClass" instead of crashing</span></div>
<div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'
>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='const g: ()
=> string' >g</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">());</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECyCeBhcVoG8BQ1oDswFsBTaAXmgCIFII
</div></pre>

```

This has some trade-offs:

- The `this` value is guaranteed to be correct at runtime, even for code not checked with TypeScript
- This will use more memory, because each class instance will have its own copy of each function defined this way
- You can't use `super.getName` in a derived class, because there's no entry in the prototype chain to fetch the base class method from

`this` parameters

In a method or function definition, an initial parameter named `this` has special meaning in TypeScript. These parameters are erased during compilation:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// TypeScript input with 'this' parameter</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(this: SomeType, x: number): void'>fn</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) this: any'>this</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type SomeType = any'>SomeType</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000"> /* ... */</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/C4TwDgpgBAyg9gWwgFXNAvFAhgOxAbgCgB6YqAW'></div></pre><pre class="shiki light-plus " style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class="language-id">js</div><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// JavaScript output</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26">fn</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">x</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000"> /* ... */</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code></div></pre>
```

TypeScript checks that calling a function with a `this` parameter is done so with a correct context. Instead of using an arrow function, we can add a `this` parameter to method definitions to statically enforce that the method is called correctly:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'>MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.name: string'>name</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span><span style="color: #A31515">"MyClass"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) MyClass.getName(this: MyClass): string'>getName</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) this: MyClass'>this</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class MyClass'>MyClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span></div></code></div></pre>
```

```

</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) MyClass.name: string' >name</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass' >c</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor
MyClass(): MyClass' >MyClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // OK</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass' >c</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
MyClass.getName(this: MyClass): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000"> // Error, would
crash</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const g: (this:
MyClass) => string' >g</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const c: MyClass' >c</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
MyClass.getName(this: MyClass): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var
console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='const g: (this: MyClass) => string' >g</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());
</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>The 'this' context of type 'void' is not assignable to
method's 'this' of type 'MyClass'.</span> <span class="code">2684</span> </span> <span
class="error-behind">The 'this' context of type 'void' is not assignable to method's 'this' of type
'MyClass'.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwDYAcAWAUAMYA2Ahooq/
</div> </pre>

```

This method takes the opposite trade-offs of the arrow function approach:

- JavaScript callers might still use the class method incorrectly without realizing it
- Only one function per class definition gets allocated, rather than one per class instance
- Base method definitions can still be called via `super`.

## this Types

In classes, a special type called `this` refers *dynamically* to the type of the current class. Let's see how this is useful:

```
<!-- prettier-ignore --> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color:
#FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Box' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
{</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.contents: string' >contents</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #A31515">""</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Box.set(value: string): this' style='border-bottom:
solid 2px lightgrey;'>set</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) value: string' >value</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (method) Box.set(value: string): this</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">this</span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Box.contents: string' >contents</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) value: string' >value</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBBCD2APaBvAUNax4DsAuApvhAFzQR4B
</div> </pre>
```

Here, TypeScript inferred the return type of `set` to be `this`, rather than `Box`. Now let's make a subclass of `Box`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
ClearableBox' >ClearableBox</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Box' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) ClearableBox.clear(): void' >clear</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.contents: string'
```

```
> contents</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">""</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const a: ClearableBox'>a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor ClearableBox(): ClearableBox'>ClearableBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const b: ClearableBox' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>b</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const a: ClearableBox'>a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Box.set(value: string): ClearableBox'>set</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"hello"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const b: ClearableBox</span></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBBCD2APaBvAUNax4DsAuApvhAFzQR4B'></div></pre>
```

You can also use `this` in a parameter type annotation:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Box'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.content: string'>content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">""</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Box.sameAs(other: this): boolean'>sameAs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: this'>other</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">this</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: this'>other</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.content: string'>content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.content: string'>content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
```

```
<div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBBCD2APaBvAUNax4DsAuApvgFzQR4BC'></div></pre>
```

This is different from writing `other : Box` -- if you have a derived class, its `sameAs` method will now only accept other instances of that same derived class:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Box'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.content: string'>content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">""</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Box.sameAs(other: this): boolean'>sameAs</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: this'>other</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">): </span><span style="color: #267F99">this</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) other: this'>other</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.content: string'>content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> === </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Box.content: string'>content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class DerivedBox'>DerivedBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Box'>Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) DerivedBox.otherContent: string'>otherContent</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #A31515">""</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const base: Box'>base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span></div></code></pre>
```

```

<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor Box(): Box' >Box</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const derived: DerivedBox' >derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor DerivedBox(): DerivedBox'
>DerivedBox</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const derived: DerivedBox'
>derived</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Box.sameAs(other: DerivedBox): boolean' >sameAs</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-err>
<data-lsp lsp='const base: Box' >base</data-lsp></data-err></span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><span class="error"><span>Argument of type 'Box' is not assignable
to parameter of type 'DerivedBox'. Property 'otherContent' is missing in type 'Box' but required in
type 'DerivedBox'.</span><span class="code">2345</span></span><span class="error-
behind">Argument of type 'Box' is not assignable to parameter of type 'DerivedBox'. Property
'otherContent' is missing in type 'Box' but required in type 'DerivedBox'.</span></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAMYA2Ahooq/
ZcnHLMAL54YYSk5KAAIjACAG6QACbUdJA0gckUaWbMjjAAwgEevPx CohKSAPyy4XiE7HygAEZkkOKgbJ,
</div></pre>

```

## this -based type guards

You can use `this is Type` in the return position for methods in classes and interfaces. When mixed with a type narrowing (e.g. `if` statements) the type of the target object would be narrowed to the specified `Type`.

```

<!-- prettier-ignore --> <pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color:
#FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class FileSystemObject' >FileSystemObject</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) FileSystemObject.isFile(): this is
FileRep' >isFile</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(): </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">is</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class FileRep' >FileRep</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
{</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">instanceof</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class FileRep' >FileRep</data-lsp></span><span style="color:

```

```
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='(method) FileSystemObject.isDirectory(): this is Directory' >isDirectory</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">(): </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">is</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Directory'
>Directory</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">instanceof</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Directory'
>Directory</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) FileSystemObject.isNetworked():
this is Networked &amp; this' >isNetworked</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(): </span><span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">is</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Networked' >Networked</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> & </span><span style="color: #267F99">this</span><span
style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) FileSystemObject.networked: boolean'
>networked</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">
(</span><span style="color: #0000FF">public</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) FileSystemObject.path: string'
>path</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">private</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) FileSystemObject.networked: boolean' >networked</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
#267F99">boolean</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class FileRep' >FileRep</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class FileSystemObject' >FileSystemObject</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">constructor</span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) path:
string' >path</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color:
```



#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">public</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) FileRep.content: string' >content</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">super</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) path: string' >path</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">>false</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Directory' >Directory</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class FileSystemObject' >FileSystemObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Directory.children: FileSystemObject[]' >children</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class FileSystemObject' >FileSystemObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> []</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">interface</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Networked' >Networked</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Networked.host: string' >host</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: FileSystemObject' >fso</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class FileSystemObject' >FileSystemObject</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor FileRep(path: string, content: string): FileRep' >FileRep</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"foo/bar.txt"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"foo"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: FileSystemObject' >fso</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) FileSystemObject.isFile(): this is FileRep' >isFile</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">()) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: FileRep' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;' >fso</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>

```
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) FileRep.content: string' >content</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const fso: FileRep</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: FileSystemObject' >fso</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) FileSystemObject.isDirectory(): this is Directory' >isDirectory</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: Directory' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>fso</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Directory.children: FileSystemObject[]' >children</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const fso: Directory</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: FileSystemObject' >fso</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) FileSystemObject.isNetworked(): this is Networked &amp; FileSystemsObject' >isNetworked</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">()) {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const fso: Networked &amp; FileSystemsObject' >fso</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Networked.host: string' >host</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const fso: Networked & FileSystemsObject</span><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">></span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAGcBcCcEsDG0AKsD2AHApraBPASQDt5p4BDACfOtQfugh2FGx0AAyKastCvcvH3XIADpiQZHxztBu0EQmGFhPTNhDTE9FGkRQTAZzVhvAgHMAGneCAAbg'></div></pre>
```

A common use-case for a this-based type guard is to allow for lazy validation of a particular field. For example, this case removes an `undefined` from the value held inside `box` when `hasValue` has been verified to be true:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Box&amp;lt;T>' >Box</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&lt;</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in Box&amp;lt;T>' >T</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">&gt; {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
```

Box&lt;T>.value?: T | undefined' >value</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">?:  
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in Box&lt;T>'>  
>T</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span  
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)  
Box&lt;T>.hasValue(): this is {&#13; value: T;&#13;}' >hasValue</data-lsp> </span>  
<span style="color: #000000">(): </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span  
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">is</span> <span style="color:  
#000000"> { <data-lsp lsp='(property) value: T' >value</data-lsp>: </span> <span style="color:  
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) T in Box&lt;T>' >T</data-lsp> </span> <span  
style="color: #000000"> } </span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">  
</span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>  
<span style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span  
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&lt;T>.value?: T | undefined'  
>value</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> != </span> <span style="color:  
#0000FF"> <data-lsp lsp='var undefined' >undefined</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:  
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div  
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:  
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">  
<data-lsp lsp='const box: Box&lt;unknown>' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:  
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000">  
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Box&lt;unknown>():  
Box&lt;unknown>' >Box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span>  
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const box:  
Box&lt;unknown>' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span  
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Box&lt;unknown>.value?: unknown'  
>value</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:  
#A31515">"Gameboy"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>  
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const box: Box&lt;unknown>' >box</data-lsp>  
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp  
lsp='(property) Box&lt;unknown>.value?: unknown' >value</data-lsp> </span> <span  
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span  
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (property) Box&lt;unknown>.value?:  
unknown</span> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span> <span style="color:  
#000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const box:  
Box&lt;unknown>' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span  
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Box&lt;unknown>.hasValue(): this is  
{&#13; value: unknown;&#13;}' >hasValue</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:  
#000000">()) {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span  
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const box: Box&lt;unknown> &#13;  
value: unknown;&#13;}' >box</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>  
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) value: unknown' style='border-bottom:  
solid 2px lightgrey;'>value</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>  
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div>

```
(property) value: unknown</span> <div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span>
</div></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEBBCD2APAPAFQHzQN4ChrQDcwQBXAUI
EkoB20QSIB0RUmWgBCALynoJDQBMMyAMyEay1hvlk53OYPA0R+0ACMkaAsnAHc4JF4GIMR9SRDoACIA
AA9CkYhO2guQtYIDkNeHgV8QoNyV2gyyurZIA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

## Parameter Properties

TypeScript offers special syntax for turning a constructor parameter into a class property with the same name and value. These are called *parameter properties* and are created by prefixing a constructor argument with one of the visibility modifiers `public`, `private`, `protected`, or `readonly`. The resulting field gets those modifier(s):

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
Params'>Params</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">public</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">readonly</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Params.x: number'>x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">protected</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Params.y: number'>y</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">private</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Params.z: number'>z</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> )</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #008000">// No body necessary</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const a: Params'>a</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =</span>
<span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor Params(x: number, y: number, z: number):
Params'>Params</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
```

```
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color:
#098658">3</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const a: Params' >a</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
Params.x: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (property) Params.x: number</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const a: Params' >a</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err>
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Params.z: number' >z</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Property 'z' is private and
only accessible within class 'Params'.</span> <span class="code">2341</span> </span> <span
class="error-behind">Property 'z' is private and only accessible within class 'Params'.</span>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBGUAUAMYA2AhooqA
3agA'>Try</a> </div> </pre>

```

## Class Expressions

```
<blockquote class='bg-reading'> <p>Background Reading:<br /> <a
href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Operators/class'>Class
expressions (MDN)</a> <br/> </p> </blockquote>
```

Class expressions are very similar to class declarations. The only real difference is that class expressions don't need a name, though we can refer to them via whatever identifier they ended up bound to:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const
someClass: typeof someClass' >someClass</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in someClass&lt;Type>'
>Type</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> &gt; {</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
someClass&lt;Type>.content: Type' >content</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">:</span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
```

```

someClass&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">constructor</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) value: Type' >value</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(type parameter) Type in
someClass&lt;Type>' >Type</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">this</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) someClass&lt;Type>.content: Type' >content</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) value: Type' >value</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const m: someClass&lt;string>' >m</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='const someClass: new &lt;string>
(value: string) => someClass&lt;string>' >someClass</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, world"</span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'></span><span class='popover'><div
class='arrow'></div>const m: someClass&lt;string>></span></code><a class='playground-
link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYewdgzgLGbBIFsCmBhANgQwhGBeGwm2APACoCe
</div></pre>

```

## abstract Classes and Members

Classes, methods, and fields in TypeScript may be *abstract*.

An *abstract method* or *abstract field* is one that hasn't had an implementation provided. These members must exist inside an *abstract class*, which cannot be directly instantiated.

The role of abstract classes is to serve as a base class for subclasses which do implement all the abstract members. When a class doesn't have any abstract members, it is said to be *concrete*.

Let's look at an example

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">abstract</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">abstract</span><span

```

```

style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Base.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(): </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Base.printName(): void' >printName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, "</span> <span style="color: #000000"> + </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">this</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Base.getName(): string' >getName</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const b: any' >b</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor Base():
Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">());</span> </div> <span
class="error"> <span>Cannot create an instance of an abstract class.</span> <span
class="code">2511</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Cannot create an instance of an
abstract class.</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMcdoe2gZwFygEwFYCMWBQBDAI0QBdp8Bj
</div> </pre>

```

We can't instantiate `Base` with `new` because it's abstract. Instead, we need to make a derived class and implement the abstract members:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
Derived' >Derived</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Derived.getName(): string' >getName</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">() {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"world"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }
</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const d: Derived' >d</data-lsp> </span> <span

```

```

style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='constructor
Derived(): Derived' >Derived</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const d: Derived' >d</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Base.printName(): void' >printName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/IYIwzgLGtSDGEAJYBthjAgQmgpgg3gFAIKiQzwIDmOE/
ek1ZsCAX0IKA9EoQBACuEDWsl0GACI4JANxwATBDgAeEHHysZsYPERI0pzdgREkULRaUHwIAEQ7q
</div> </pre>

```

Notice that if we forget to implement the base class's abstract members, we'll get an error:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-err> <data-lsp
lsp='class Derived' >Derived</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">extends</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>Non-abstract class
'Derived' does not implement inherited abstract member 'getName' from class 'Base'.</span>
<span class="code">2515</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">Non-abstract class
'Derived' does not implement inherited abstract member 'getName' from class 'Base'.</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #008000"> // forgot to
do anything</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYCMGBQBDAI0QBdp8BjI
</div> </pre>

```

## Abstract Construct Signatures

Sometimes you want to accept some class constructor function that produces an instance of a class which derives from some abstract class.

For example, you might want to write this code:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
greet(ctor: typeof Base): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> (</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(parameter) ctor: typeof Base' >ctor</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000"> :</span> <span style="color: #0000FF"> typeof</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='class Base'
>Base</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> ) {</span> </div> <div class='line'>

```



```

<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const instance:
any' >instance</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26">
<data-lsp lsp='(parameter) ctor: abstract new () => Base' >ctor</data-lsp></span> <span
style="color: #000000">());</span></div> <span class="error"> <span>Cannot create an instance
of an abstract class.</span> <span class="code">2511</span></span> <span class="error-
behind">Cannot create an instance of an abstract class.</span> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const instance:
any' >instance</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"><data-lsp lsp='any' >printName</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">());
</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwFYCMWBQBDAI0QBdp8Bj
</div></pre>

```

TypeScript is correctly telling you that you're trying to instantiate an abstract class. After all, given the definition of `greet`, it's perfectly legal to write this code, which would end up constructing an abstract class:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// Bad!</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='const greet: any'
>greet</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='const Base: any' >Base</data-lsp></span> <span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/CYUwxgNghgTiAEYD2A7AzgF3gcziDAXPFCgJ4A08AQ
ALQ9gCuGHI3acawAIQtclfAAoadAJRMgA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

Instead, you want to write a function that accepts something with a construct signature:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function
greet(ctor: new () => Base): void' >greet</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">
(</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) ctor: new () => Base'
>ctor</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">new</span> <span style="color: #000000">() </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">){</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const instance: Base' >instance</data-lsp></span> <span style="color: #000000">
= </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>

```

```

<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) ctor: new () => Base' >ctor</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='const instance: Base'
>instance</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Base.printName(): void' >printName</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function greet(ctor: new () => Base): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='class Derived' >Derived</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function greet(ctor: new () => Base): void' >greet</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-err> <data-lsp
lsp='class Base' >Base</data-lsp> </data-err> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span>
</div> <span class="error"> <span>Argument of type 'typeof Base' is not assignable to parameter
of type 'new () => Base'. Cannot assign an abstract constructor type to a non-abstract
constructor type.</span> <span class="code">2345</span> </span> <span class="error-
behind">Argument of type 'typeof Base' is not assignable to parameter of type 'new () => Base'.
Cannot assign an abstract constructor type to a non-abstract constructor type.</span> </code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFMCdoe2gZwFygEwGYAsBWAUAIYBGiAltAQm
</div> </pre>

```

Now TypeScript correctly tells you about which class constructor functions can be invoked - `Derived` can because it's concrete, but `Base` cannot.

## Relationships Between Classes

In most cases, classes in TypeScript are compared structurally, the same as other types.

For example, these two classes can be used in place of each other because they're identical:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class
Point1' >Point1</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='(property) Point1.x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='(property) Point1.y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:

```

```
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='class Point2' >Point2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point2.x: number' >x</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) Point2.y: number' >y</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// OK</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const p: Point1' >p</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Point1' >Point1</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">new</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor
Point2(): Point2' >Point2</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span> </div>
</code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAEAKD2BLAdgFwlzQN4ChrQA9oBeaABgG
</div> </pre>
```

Similarly, subtype relationships between classes exist even if there's no explicit inheritance:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
Person' >Person</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Person.name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span>
</span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) Person.age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">}</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #0000FF">class</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Employee' >Employee</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Employee.name: string'
>name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">string</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property)
Employee.age: number' >age</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">:</span> </span> <span
style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(property) Employee.salary: number' >salary</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">:</span> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div>
```

```
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// OK</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const p: Person' >p</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:
</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Person' >Person</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #0000FF">new</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='constructor
Employee(): Employee' >Employee</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">();</span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAGcBcCcEsDG0BcoBmBDANpApgFCLaaSSgAKe:
</div></pre>
```

This sounds straightforward, but there are a few cases that seem stranger than others.

Empty classes have no members. In a structural type system, a type with no members is generally a supertype of anything else. So if you write an empty class (don't!), anything can be used in place of it:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">class</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class
Empty' >Empty</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {}</span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: Empty): void' >fn</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp
lsp='(parameter) x: Empty' >x</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span
style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class Empty' >Empty</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #008000">// can't do anything with &apos;x&apos;;, so I
won't</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span></div> <div
class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// All OK!</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: Empty): void' >fn</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var window:
Window &amp; typeOf globalThis' >>window</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp
lsp='function fn(x: Empty): void' >fn</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">({});
</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x:
Empty): void' >fn</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='function fn(x: Empty): void' >fn</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">);</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/MYGwhgzhAECiC2AHALgT2gbwL4CgcDMBXAO2GQE
</div></pre>
```

# Modules

JavaScript has a long history of different ways to handle modularizing code. TypeScript having been around since 2012, has implemented support for a lot of these formats, but over time the community and the JavaScript specification has converged on a format called ES Modules (or ES6 modules). You might know it as the `import / export` syntax.

ES Modules was added to the JavaScript spec in 2015, and by 2020 had broad support in most web browsers and JavaScript runtimes.

For focus, the handbook will cover both ES Modules and its popular pre-cursor CommonJS `module.exports =` syntax, and you can find information about the other module patterns in the reference section under [Modules](#).

## How JavaScript Modules are Defined

In TypeScript, just as in ECMAScript 2015, any file containing a top-level `import` or `export` is considered a module.

Conversely, a file without any top-level import or export declarations is treated as a script whose contents are available in the global scope (and therefore to modules as well).

Modules are executed within their own scope, not in the global scope. This means that variables, functions, classes, etc. declared in a module are not visible outside the module unless they are explicitly exported using one of the export forms. Conversely, to consume a variable, function, class, interface, etc. exported from a different module, it has to be imported using one of the import forms.

## Non-modules

Before we start, it's important to understand what TypeScript considers a module. The JavaScript specification declares that any JavaScript files without an `export` or top-level `await` should be considered a script and not a module.

Inside a script file variables and types are declared to be in the shared global scope, and it's assumed that you'll either use the `--outFile` compiler option to join multiple input files into one output file, or use multiple `<script>` tags in your HTML to load these files (in the correct order!).

If you have a file that doesn't currently have any `import` s or `export` s, but you want to be treated as a module, add the line:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"> {};</span></div></code><a class='playground-link' href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/KYDwDg9gTgLgBAbwL4G4g'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

which will change the file be a module exporting nothing. This syntax works regardless of your module target.

## Modules in TypeScript

```
<blockquote class='bg-reading'><p>Additional Reading:<br /><a href='https://exploringjs.com/impatient-js/ch_modules.html#overview-syntax-of-ecmascript-modules'>Impatient JS (Modules)</a><br/><a href='https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Guide/Modules'>MDN: JavaScript Modules</a><br/></p></blockquote>
```

There are three main things to consider when writing module-based code in TypeScript:

- **Syntax:** What syntax do I want to use to import and export things?
- **Module Resolution:** What is the relationship between module names (or paths) and files on disk?
- **Module Output Target:** What should my emitted JavaScript module look like?

## ES Module Syntax

A file can declare a main export via `export default` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// @filename: hello.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">default</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function helloWorld(): void'>helloWorld</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">() {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">. </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #A31515">"Hello, world!"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
```

```
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKAFvWsB7AOgBcBnAKt'
</div> </pre>
```

This is then imported via:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias)
function hello(): void&#13;import hello' >hello</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #A31515">"/hello.js"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) hello():
void&#13;import hello' >hello</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">();</span>
</div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKAFvWsB7AOgBcBnAKI'
</div> </pre>
```

In addition to the default export, you can have more than one export of variables and functions via the `export` by omitting `default`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// @filename:
maths.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">var</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var pi: number' >pi</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">3.14</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#0000FF">let</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='let squareTwo: number' >squareTwo</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">1.41</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color:
#000000"></span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const phi: 1.61' >phi</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#098658">1.61</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='class RandomNumberGenerator' >RandomNumberGenerator</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> {}</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function absolute(num: number): number'
>absolute</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
```

```
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num: number' >num</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num: number' >num</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> &lt;</span><span style="color: #098658">0</span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num:
number' >num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> * -</span><span style="color:
#098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num:
number' >num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000">}</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKVyAuALAZwDpdCAoe/
</div></pre>
```

These can be used in another file via the `import` syntax:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) var
pi: number&#13;import pi' >pi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, </span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) const phi: 1.61&#13;import phi'
>phi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(alias) function absolute(num: number): number&#13;import absolute'
>absolute</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">from</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#A31515">"/.maths.js"</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method)
Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) var pi: number&#13;import pi'
>pi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const absPhi: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>absPhi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) absolute(num: number): number&#13;import
absolute' >absolute</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) const phi: 1.61&#13;import phi' >phi</data-
lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'>
</span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const absPhi: number</span>
</code><a class='playground-link'
```



href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKVyAuALAZwDpdCAoe/  
</div></pre>

## Additional Import Syntax

An import can be renamed using a format like `import {old as new}` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='var pi:
number'>pi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">as</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(alias) var ï€: number&#13;import ï€'>ï€</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"/.maths.js"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #001080"><data-
lsp lsp='var console: Console'>console</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(alias) var ï€: number&#13;import ï€'>ï€</data-lsp></span><span
style="color: #000000">);</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span
class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>(alias) var ï€: number import ï€</span></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKVyAuALAZwDpdCAoe/
EA'>Try</a></div></pre>
```

You can mix and match the above syntax into a single `import` :

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// @filename:
maths.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const pi: 3.14'>pi</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #098658">3.14</span>
<span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#AF00DB">default</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">class</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99">
<data-lsp lsp='class RandomNumberGenerator'>RandomNumberGenerator</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000">// @filename: app.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#AF00DB">import</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) class RNg&#13;import RNg'>RNg</data-lsp>
```

```

</span> <span style="color: #000000">, { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp
lsp='const pi: 3.14' >pi</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">as</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) const Ï€: 3.14&#13;import Ï€' >Ï€</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"/.maths.js"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='(alias) class RNGen&#13;import RNGen' >RNGen</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span
class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (alias) class RNGen import RNGen</span> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-
lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void' >log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) const Ï€:
3.14&#13;import Ï€' >Ï€</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span> <span class='popover'> <div class='arrow'> </div> (alias)
const Ï€: 3.14 import Ï€</span> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKVyAuALAZwDpdCAoe/'
</div> </pre>

```

You can take all of the exported objects and put them into a single namespace using `* as name` :

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">// @filename:
app.ts</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">* </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">as</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='import math' >math</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"/.maths.js"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-
lsp lsp='var console: Console' >console</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(method) Console.log(...data: any[]): void'
>log</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='import math' >math</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='var pi: number' >pi</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const positivePhi: number' style='border-bottom: solid 2px
lightgrey;'>positivePhi</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='import math' >math</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='function
absolute(num: number): number' >absolute</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">

```

You can import a file and *not* include any variables into your current module via `import` `"./file"`:

In this case, the `import` does nothing. However, all of the code in `maths.ts` was evaluated, which could trigger side-effects which affect other objects.

Types can be exported and imported using the same syntax as JavaScript values:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">// @filename: animal.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Cat = {&#13; breed: string;&#13; yearOfBirth: number;&#13;}' >Cat</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) breed: string' >breed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000">; </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) yearOfBirth: number' >yearOfBirth</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">: </span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"> };</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
```

```

#AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">interface</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#267F99"><data-lsp lsp='interface Dog' >Dog</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Dog.breeds: string[]' >breeds</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color: #267F99">string</span>
<span style="color: #000000">[]</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) Dog.yearOfBirth: number'
>yearOfBirth</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #000000">}</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#008000">//@filename: app.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#AF00DB">import</span><span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color:
#001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) type Cat = {&#13; breed: string;&#13; yearOfBirth:
number;&#13;}&#13;import Cat' >Cat</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000">,</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) interface
Dog&#13;import Dog' >Dog</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> } </span>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span
style="color: #A31515">"./animal.js"</span><span style="color: #000000"></span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Animals = Cat | Dog' >Animals</data-lsp>
</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp
lsp='(alias) type Cat = {&#13; breed: string;&#13; yearOfBirth:
number;&#13;}&#13;import Cat' >Cat</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> | </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) interface
Dog&#13;import Dog' >Dog</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"></span>
</div></code><a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKZjqubAHQAuAzgFDwA
spAA'>Try</a></div></pre>

```

TypeScript has extended the `import` syntax with `import type` which is an import which can *only* import types.

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #008000">//@filename:
animal.ts</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0000FF">type</span><span style="color:
#000000"> </span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='type Cat = {&#13; breed:
string;&#13; yearOfBirth: number;&#13;}' >Cat</data-lsp></span><span style="color:
#000000"> = { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) breed: string'
>breed</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span><span style="color:
#267F99">string</span><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #001080">
<data-lsp lsp='(property) yearOfBirth: number' >yearOfBirth</data-lsp></span><span

```

```
style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> };</span> </div> <span class="error"> <span>'createCatName' cannot be
used as a value because it was imported using 'import type'.</span> <span
class="code">1361</span> </span> <span class="error-behind">'createCatName' cannot be used
as a value because it was imported using 'import type'.</span> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">export</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Dog = {&#13; breeds: string[];&#13; yearOfBirth:
number;&#13;}' >Dog</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = { </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property) breeds: string[]' >breeds</data-lsp> </span>
<span style="color: #000000">: </span> <span style="color: #267F99">string</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> [</span> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(property)
yearOfBirth: number' >yearOfBirth</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">: </span>
<span style="color: #267F99">number</span> <span style="color: #000000"> };</span> </div>
<div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span> <span style="color: #000000">
</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='const createCatName: () => string'
>createCatName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = () </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">=&gt;</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"fluffy"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">//@filename: valid.ts</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #AF00DB">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> { </span> <span
style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) type Cat = {&#13; breed: string;&#13;
yearOfBirth: number;&#13;}&#13;&#13;import Cat' >Cat</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000">, </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) type Dog =
{&#13; breeds: string[];&#13; yearOfBirth: number;&#13;}&#13;&#13;import Dog'
>Dog</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">from</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"/animal.js"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'>
<span style="color: #AF00DB">export</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">type</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='type Animals = Cat | Dog' >Animals</data-lsp> </span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) type Cat =
{&#13; breed: string;&#13; yearOfBirth: number;&#13;}&#13;&#13;import Cat'
>Cat</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> | </span> <span style="color:
#267F99"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) type Dog = {&#13; breeds: string[];&#13; yearOfBirth:
number;&#13;}&#13;&#13;import Dog' >Dog</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #008000">//@filename:
app.ts</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">type</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> { </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) const createCatName:
() => string&#13;import createCatName' >createCatName</data-lsp> </span> <span
```

```

style="color: #000000"> } </span> <span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"/animal.js"</span> <span
style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const name: string' >name</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> =
</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) createCatName():'
string&#13;import createCatName' >createCatName</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000">();</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKZjqubAHQAuAzgFDwA
</div> </pre>

```

This syntax allows a non-TypeScript transpiler like Babel, swc or esbuild to know what imports can be safely removed.

## ES Module Syntax with CommonJS Behavior

TypeScript has ES Module syntax which *directly* correlates to a CommonJS and AMD `require`. Imports using ES Module are *for most cases* the same as the `require` from those environments, but this syntax ensures you have a 1 to 1 match in your TypeScript file with the CommonJS output:

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"> <div
class='code-container'> <code> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias)
module &quot;fs&quot;&#13;import fs = require(&quot;fs&quot;)'
>fs</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#AF00DB">require</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"fs"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1"> <data-lsp lsp='const code: string' >code</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color:
#000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #001080"> <data-lsp lsp='(alias) module
&quot;fs&quot;&#13;import fs = require(&quot;fs&quot;)' >fs</data-lsp>
</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #795E26"> <data-lsp
lsp='function fs.readFileSync(path: number | fs.PathLike, options: {&#13; encoding:
BufferEncoding;&#13; flag?: string | undefined;&#13;} | BufferEncoding): string (+2
overloads)' >readFileSync</data-lsp> </span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"hello.ts"</span> <span style="color: #000000">, </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"utf8"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> </code>
<a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PQgEB4CcFMDNpgOwMbVAFwJ4AdoGcBeAlkQHsATa
</div> </pre>

```

You can learn more about this syntax in the [modules reference page](#).

# CommonJS Syntax

CommonJS is the format which most modules on npm are delivered in. Even if you are writing using the ES Modules syntax above, having a brief understanding of how CommonJS syntax works will help you debug easier.

## Exporting

Identifiers are exported via setting the `exports` property on a global called `module`.

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='function absolute(num: number): number'>absolute</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num: number'>num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></span><span style="color: #267F99">number</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num: number'>num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #098658"><data-lsp lsp='<span style="color: #098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num: number'>num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> * </span><span style="color: #098658">1</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">return</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(parameter) num: number'>num</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='var module: NodeModule'>module</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #267F99"><data-lsp lsp='(property) NodeJS.Module.exports: any'>exports</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = {</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) pi: number'>pi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) squareTwo: number'>squareTwo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) phi: number'>phi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">:</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(property) absolute: (num: number) => number'>absolute</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">=</span></div></code></pre>
```

```
style="color: #000000">,</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a class='playground-link'>
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PQgEB4CcFMDNpgOWMbVAFwJ4AdoGcBeAlkQHsATa
</div></pre>
```

Then these files can be imported via a `require` statement:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
maths: any' >maths</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='var require: NodeRequire&#13;(id: string) => any'
>require</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"maths"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const maths: any' >maths</data-lsp></span>
<span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='any'
style='border-bottom: solid 2px lightgrey;'>pi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;
</span></div><span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div
class='arrow'></div>any</span></code><a class='playground-link'>
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFsHsBMFcA2BTAXKAxtSMB2ArAZwCgQIAzASx'
KAADD7CLPCCZu6gAFSgALQAJADcAaBxCUkuuQC+xMQwCCicyAAectCCPKBKfnlylOgAzJyZACwANHmE
</div></pre>
```

Or you can simplify a bit using the destructuring feature in JavaScript:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #0000FF">const</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #0070C1"><data-lsp lsp='const
squareTwo: any' >squareTwo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> } = </span>
<span style="color: #795E26"><data-lsp lsp='var require: NodeRequire&#13;(id: string) =>
any' >require</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"maths"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div class='line'>
<span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='const squareTwo: any' style='border-bottom: solid
2px lightgrey;'>squareTwo</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div>
<span class='popover-prefix'> </span><span class='popover'><div class='arrow'></div>const
squareTwo: any</span></code><a class='playground-link'>
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEFsHsBMFcA2BTAXKAxtSMB2ArAZwCgQIAzASx'
KAADD7CLPCCZu6gAFSgALQAJADcAaBxCUkuuQC+xMQwCCicyAAectCCPKBKfnlylOgAzJyZACwANHmE
</div></pre>
```

## CommonJS and ES Modules interop

There is a mis-match in features between CommonJS and ES Module because ES Modules only support having the default export as an object, and never as a function. TypeScript has a compiler



flag to reduce the friction between the two different sets of constraints with [esModuleInterop](#).

## TypeScript's Module Resolution Options

Module resolution is the process of taking a string from the `import` or `require` statement, and determining what file that string refers to.

TypeScript includes two resolution strategies: Classic and Node. Classic, the default when the compiler flag `module` is not `commonjs`, is included for backwards compatibility. The Node strategy replicates how Node.js works in CommonJS mode, with additional checks for `.ts` and `.d.ts`.

There are many TSConfig flags which influence the module strategy within TypeScript: [moduleResolution](#), [baseUrl](#), [paths](#), [rootDirs](#).

For the full details on how these strategies work, you can consult the [Module Resolution](#).

## TypeScript's Module Output Options

There are two options which affect the emitted JavaScript output:

- [target](#) which determines which JS features are downleveled (converted to run in older JavaScript runtimes) and which are left intact
- [module](#) which determines what code is used for modules to interact with each other

Which `target` you use is determined by the features available in the JavaScript runtime you expect to run the TypeScript code in. That could be: the oldest web browser you support, the lowest version of Node.js you expect to run on or could come from unique constraints from your runtime - like Electron for example.

All communication between modules happens via a module loader, the compiler flag `module` determines which one is used. At runtime the module loader is responsible for locating and executing all dependencies of a module before executing it.

For example, here is a TypeScript file using ES Modules syntax, showcasing a few different options for `module`:

```
<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span><span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) const valueOfPi: 3.142&#13;import valueOfPi' >valueOfPi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"./constants.js"</span><span
```

```

style="color: #000000">;</span></div> <div class='line'><span style="color:
#AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #0070C1">
<data-lsp lsp='const twoPi: number' >twoPi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000"> =
</span><span style="color: #001080"><data-lsp lsp='(alias) const valueOfPi:
3.142&#13;import valueOfPi' >valueOfPi</data-lsp></span><span style="color: #000000">
* </span><span style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span>
</div></code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEDMEsBsFMB2BDAtvAXKAXge0QM4AuyiRBAAdC
</div></pre>

```

## ES2020

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #AF00DB">import</span>
<span style="color: #000000"> { </span><span style="color: #001080">valueOfPi</span><span
style="color: #000000"> } </span><span style="color: #AF00DB">from</span><span
style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color: #A31515">"./constants.js"</span><span
style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#AF00DB">export</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1">twoPi</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#001080">valueOfPi</span><span style="color: #000000"> * </span><span style="color:
#098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code> <a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEGcAsHsHcCiBbAlgFwFAgs2ATAVwBsBTALIFMgC
</div></pre>

```

## CommonJS

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #A31515">"use strict"
</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color:
#267F99">Object</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color:
#795E26">defineProperty</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#267F99">exports</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"__esModule"</span><span style="color: #000000">,</span><span style="color:
#001080">value:</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0000FF">true</span><span style="color: #000000"> });</span></div><div class='line'><span
style="color: #267F99">exports</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span><span
style="color: #001080">twoPi</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #0000FF">void</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#098658">0</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span

```

```

style="color: #0000FF">const</span><span style="color: #000000"> </span><span style="color:
#0070C1">constants_js_1</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color:
#795E26">require</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color:
#A31515">"/constants.js"</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #267F99">exports</span><span style="color: #000000">.
</span><span style="color: #001080">twoPi</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span>
<span style="color: #001080">constants_js_1</span><span style="color: #000000">.</span>
<span style="color: #001080">valueOfPi</span><span style="color: #000000"> * </span><span
style="color: #098658">2</span><span style="color: #000000">;</span></div></code><a
class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEgCAsHsHcCiBbAlgFwFAgs2ATAVwBsBTALIAGN;
</div></pre>

```

## UMD

```

<pre class="shiki light-plus twoslash lsp" style="background-color: #FFFFFF; color: #000000"><div
class='code-container'><code><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #0000FF">function</span><span style="color: #000000"> (</span><span
style="color: #001080">factory</span><span style="color: #000000">){</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99">module</span><span
style="color: #000000">=== </span><span style="color: #A31515">"object"</span><span
style="color: #000000">&& </span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span
style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #267F99">module</span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #267F99">exports</span><span
style="color: #000000">=== </span><span style="color: #A31515">"object"</span><span
style="color: #000000">){</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000">
</span><span style="color: #0000FF">var</span><span style="color: #000000"></span>
<span style="color: #001080">v</span><span style="color: #000000"> = </span><span
style="color: #795E26">factory</span><span style="color: #000000">(</span><span
style="color: #001080">require</span><span style="color: #000000">, </span><span
style="color: #267F99">exports</span><span style="color: #000000">);</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span>
<span style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #001080">v</span><span
style="color: #000000"> !== </span><span style="color: #0000FF">undefined</span><span
style="color: #000000">)</span><span style="color: #267F99">module</span><span
style="color: #000000">.</span><span style="color: #267F99">exports</span><span
style="color: #000000"> = </span><span style="color: #001080">v</span><span style="color:
#000000">;</span></div><div class='line'><span style="color: #000000"> }</span></div><div
class='line'><span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">else</span>
<span style="color: #000000"></span><span style="color: #AF00DB">if</span><span
style="color: #000000">(</span><span style="color: #0000FF">typeof</span><span

```

```
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #001080">define</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> === </span> <span style="color: #A31515">"function"</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> && </span> <span style="color: #001080">define</span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">amd</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #795E26">define</span> <span style="color: #000000">([</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"require"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"exports"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"/constants.js"</span> <span style="color: #000000">],</span> <span
style="color: #001080">factory</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color:
#000000">))(</span> <span style="color: #0000FF">function</span> <span style="color:
#000000"> (</span> <span style="color: #001080">require</span> <span style="color:
#000000">,</span> <span style="color: #001080">exports</span> <span style="color:
#000000">)</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #A31515">"use strict"</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">Object</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#795E26">defineProperty</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#267F99">exports</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"__esModule"</span> <span style="color: #000000">,</span> <span style="color:
#001080">value:</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0000FF">true</span> <span style="color: #000000"> }</span>;</div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #267F99">exports</span> <span
style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color: #001080">twoPi</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color: #0000FF">void</span> <span
style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color: #098658">0</span> <span style="color:
#000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span
style="color: #0000FF">const</span> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#0070C1">constants_js_1</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#795E26">require</span> <span style="color: #000000">(</span> <span style="color:
#A31515">"/constants.js"</span> <span style="color: #000000">);</span> </div> <div
class='line'> <span style="color: #000000"> </span> <span style="color:
#267F99">exports</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080">twoPi</span> <span style="color: #000000"> = </span> <span style="color:
#001080">constants_js_1</span> <span style="color: #000000">.</span> <span style="color:
#001080">valueOfPi</span> <span style="color: #000000"> * </span> <span style="color:
#098658">2</span> <span style="color: #000000">;</span> </div> <div class='line'> <span
style="color: #000000">});</span> </div> </code> <a class='playground-link'
href='https://www.typescriptlang.org/play/#code/PTAEAEGcAsHsHcCiBbAlgFwFAgs2ATAVwBsBTALIEOX2
SgA3qABuAQ2KFSAeQBmABVSgAvqDntkoAEQA6YAGNYDSOnEN0kXQCtl2gNyZMpAB78WgoycHp4sJa
</div> </pre>
```

Note that ES2020 is effectively the same as the original `index.ts`.

You can see all of the available options and what their emitted JavaScript code looks like in the [TSConfig Reference for module](#).

## TypeScript namespaces

TypeScript has its own module format called `namespaces` which pre-dates the ES Modules standard. This syntax has a lot of useful features for creating complex definition files, and still sees active use [in DefinitelyTyped](#). While not deprecated, the majority of the features in namespaces exist in ES Modules and we recommend you use that to align with JavaScript's direction. You can learn more about namespaces in [the namespaces reference page](#).